

**TC 3-20.97**

---

---

**Reconnaissance Troop  
Collective Task Publication**

---

---

**February 2013**

---

---

**Headquarters, Department of the Army**

---

---

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.

**This publication is available at Army Knowledge Online  
(<https://armypubs.us.army.mil/doctrine/index.html>).**

# RECONNAISSANCE TROOP COLLECTIVE TASK PUBLICATION

## Contents

	Page
<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>Chapter 1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Section I – Text References .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Section II – Army Approach to Training .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
Army Training Strategy .....	1-2
Army Leadership Development Strategy .....	1-3
Army Training System .....	1-4
Unit Training Management .....	1-8
Army Force Generation .....	1-8
<b>Section III – Other Training Considerations .....</b>	<b>1-10</b>
Operational Environment .....	1-10
Decisive Action .....	1-12
Planning Training .....	1-16
Training Products .....	1-16
Live, Virtual, Constructive, and Gaming Training .....	1-21
<b>Chapter 2 Crosswalks and Outlines .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Section I – METL Crosswalk .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Section II – Training and Evaluation Outlines .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
Introduction .....	2-9
Structure .....	2-9
Format .....	2-9
Use .....	2-10
Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4000) .....	2-11
Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4010) .....	2-17

## Contents

---

Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4011).....	2-27
Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4025) .....	2-36
Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company) (17-2-9225) ...	2-42
Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company) (17-2-0320) ..	2-51
Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1324) .....	2-58
Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations (Platoon-Company) (19-3-2406).....	2-65
Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company) (07-2-4054) .....	2-75
Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3036).....	2-79
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company) (07-2-5027) .....	2-86
Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9006).....	2-89
Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support (63-2-4546) .....	2-95
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-2-9224) ..	2-101
Treat Casualties (08-2-0003).....	2-107
Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0004) .....	2-111
Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) (34-5-0471) .....	2-115
Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations (34-5-0470) .....	2-120
Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting (34-5-0472).....	2-130
<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Supporting Battle/Crew Drills.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Battle/Crew Drills.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG]) (07-3-D9501) .....	3-4
Establish Security at the Halt (07-3-D9508) .....	3-10
Conduct the 5 Cs (05-3-D0016).....	3-15
React to Ambush (Far) (07-3-D9503) .....	3-17
React to Indirect Fire (07-3-D9504) .....	3-21
React to Ambush (Near) (07-3-D9502).....	3-23
React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement (05-3-D0017) .....	3-28
Establish a Hasty Checkpoint (19-4-D0105).....	3-30
Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted) (07-3-D9507) .....	3-34

React to Air Attack Drill (17-3-D8004) .....	3-37
React to Nuclear Attack (07-3-D9483) .....	3-40
React to a Chemical Attack (03-3-D0035) .....	3-42
<b>Appendix A Troop Unit Task List.....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B Reconnaissance Troop Higher Headquarters' METL .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C CATS Task Selection to METL Matrix .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>References .....</b>	<b>References-1</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>Index-1</b>

## Figures

Figure 1-1. Collective tasks supporting higher unit METL .....	1-14
Figure 1. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted) .....	3-6
Figure 1. Establish security at the halt .....	3-11
Figure 2. Establish security at the halt (mounted) (herringbone) .....	3-12
Figure 3. Establish security at the halt (mounted) (coil) .....	3-13
Figure 1. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) .....	3-17
Figure 1. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) .....	3-24

## Tables

Table 1-1. Chapter 1 text references .....	1-1
Table 2-1. Primary references for decisive actions .....	2-2
Table 2-2. Example of a mounted and dismounted reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix.....	2-2
Table 2-3. Example of a reconnaissance and surveillance brigade (R & S) reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix.....	2-6
Table 3-1. METL collective task to drill table.....	3-1
Table A-1. Reconnaissance troop unit task list (UTL) .....	A-1

## Contents

---

Table B-1. Example of a reconnaissance squadron's METL .....	B-1
Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix.....	C-2

## **Preface**

### **Purpose**

This training circular (TC) is a tool commanders can use during training strategy development. The products in this TC are developed to support the commanders mission-essential task list (METL) training strategy.

### **Scope**

This TC provides guidance for commanders, staff, leaders, and Soldiers who plan, prepare, execute, and assess training of the reconnaissance troop.

### **Intended Audience**

The primary target audience for this publication is the troop commander, staff, and other leaders within the reconnaissance troop. The secondary audience consists of training developers who develop training support materials for professional military education (PME).

### **Applicability**

This publication applies to the Active Army, Army National Guard (ARNG)/Army National Guard of the United States (ARNGUS), and the United States Army Reserve (USAR) unless otherwise stated.

### **Feedback**

The proponent for this publication is the U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). The preparing agency is the U.S. Army Maneuver Center of Excellence (MCoE). Send comments and recommendations by any means, U.S. mail, e-mail, fax, or telephone, using the format of DA Form 2028, *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*. Point of contact information is as follows.

E-mail: [usarmy.benning.mcoe.mbx.doctrine@mail.mil](mailto:usarmy.benning.mcoe.mbx.doctrine@mail.mil)  
Phone: COM 706-545-7114 or DSN 835-7114  
Fax: COM 706-545-8511 or DSN 835-8511  
U.S. Mail: Commanding General, MCoE  
Directorate of Training and Doctrine (DOTD)  
Doctrine and Collective Training Division  
ATTN: ATZB-TDD  
Fort Benning, GA 31905-5410

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns may refer to either men or women.

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## Chapter 1

# Introduction

Reconnaissance troops are the key components of the reconnaissance squadrons in the four types of modular brigade combat teams (BCT)—heavy brigade combat team (HBCT), Infantry brigade combat team (IBCT), and Stryker brigade combat team (SBCT), and in the reconnaissance and surveillance squadron of the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) brigade. These troops are uniquely organized, manned, and equipped to provide accurate, timely, and relevant combat information in a complex operational environment (OE), which often involves reconnaissance of a large physical area. This information enables the parent unit commander to make rapid, well-informed tactical decisions. Combined with the information management systems of the parent unit, the reconnaissance troop provides the commander with an unprecedented ability to achieve information superiority and situational understanding (SU), as well as the ability to create and broadcast a common operational picture (COP) for his subordinate units. Within the highly variable environments and enemy profiles of future areas of operations (AO) the reconnaissance troop is essential to successful surveillance and reconnaissance operations.

## SECTION I – TEXT REFERENCES

1-1. Table 1-1 contains the references used in this chapter.

**Table 1-1. Chapter 1 text references**

<b>Reference</b>	<b>Subject</b>
ATLDG	Army, G-3/5/7 memorandum, <i>Army Training and Leader Development Guidance</i>
ATS	Deputy Chief of Staff, G-3/5/7 memorandum, <i>Army Training Strategy</i>
FM 3-20.971	<i>Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop</i>
ATTP 3-20.97	<i>Dismounted Reconnaissance Troop</i>
FM 3-20.21	<i>Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery</i>

**Table 1-1. Chapter 1 text references (continued)**

<i>Reference</i>	<i>Subject</i>
FM 3-20.96	<i>Reconnaissance and Cavalry Squadron</i>
LDS	<i>The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army</i>
ADP 3-0	<i>Unified Land Operations</i>
ADP 7-0	<i>Training Units and Developing Leaders</i>
FM 6-22	<i>Army Leadership: Competent, Confident, and Agile</i>
ATN	Army Training Network link: <a href="https://atn.army.mil/index.aspx">https://atn.army.mil/index.aspx</a>
FM 1-02	<i>Operational Terms and Graphics</i>
ADP 5-0	<i>The Operations Process</i>
ADP 6-0	<i>Mission Command</i>
AR 350-1	<i>Army Training and Leader Development</i>

## SECTION II – ARMY APPROACH TO TRAINING

1-2. Before commanders begin planning, preparing, executing and assessing unit training, they first must have a clear understanding of the Army's training and leader development strategies, training system, and unit training management (UTM).

### ARMY TRAINING STRATEGY

1-3. The Army goal is to routinely generate trained and ready units for both current missions and future contingencies at an operational tempo that is sustainable. (Refer to *Army Training and Leader Development Guidance [ATLDG]*, FY 10-11 for more information.) To accomplish this goal, the Army G-3/5/7 has developed the comprehensive Army training strategy (ATS).

1-4. The ATS describes the ends, ways, and means required to adapt Army training programs to an era of persistent conflict, to prepare units and leaders to conduct decisive action, and to rebuild strategic depth. The ATS generates cohesive, trained, and ready forces that can dominate at any point on the spectrum of conflict, in any environment, and under all conditions.

1-5. The ATS) has identified ten goals. Each goal has supporting objectives that detail the ATS. Obtaining each goal ensures the Army generates trained and ready units. The goals are—

- Train units for decisive action operations.
- Enable adaption of training.
- Train and sustain Soldier skills.
- Train and sustain Army civilian skills.
- Sustain and improve effectiveness of combat training centers (CTCs).
- Provide training at home station and while deployed.
- Provide training support system live, virtual, constructive, and gaming (LVCG) enablers.
- Increase culture and foreign language competencies.
- Provide supporting and integrating capabilities.
- Resource the Army training strategy.

## ARMY LEADERSHIP DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY

1-6. While the ATS was being developed, the commanding general (CG) of the U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) concurrently developed a leader development strategy (LDS). *The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army* discusses how the Army adapts the way in which it develops leaders. This strategy presents the challenges of the operational environment (OE), the implications of the OE on leader development, and the mission, framework, characteristics, and imperatives of and how to implement the strategy. The LDS describes eight specific imperatives designed to guide the policy and actions necessary to produce the future leaders the Army needs.

1-7. The LDS is part of a campaign of learning. It seeks to be as adaptive and innovative as the leaders it must develop. The LDS is grounded in Army leadership doctrine and seeks to deliver the leader qualities described in both Army doctrine and capstone concepts. (Refer to FM 6-22 and *The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army* for more information.) The following document describes leadership qualities:

**ADP 3-0.** This manual describes how the Army seizes, retains, and exploits the initiative to gain and maintain a position of relative advantage in sustained land operations through simultaneous offensive, defensive, and stability operations in

order to prevent or deter conflict, prevail in war, and creates the conditions for favorable conflict resolution.

## ARMY TRAINING SYSTEM

1-8. The Army Training System prepares Soldiers, Army civilians, organizations, and their leaders to conduct decisive action. The training system is built upon a foundation of disciplined, educated, and professional Soldiers, civilians, and leaders, adhering to principles that provide guidance.

### Principles of Unit Training

1-9. To maintain a professional baseline the Army has developed 11 training principles that govern Army training. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.) The principles provide a broad but basic foundation to guide how commanders and other leaders plan, prepare, execute, and assess effective training. The 11 principles of training are:

- **Commanders are responsible for training units.** The unit commander is the unit's primary training manager and trainer. Commanders hold their subordinate leaders responsible for training their respective organizations. This responsibility applies to all units in both the operational Army and the generating force.
- **Noncommissioned officers train individuals, crews, and small teams.** Noncommissioned officers (NCOs) are the primary trainers of enlisted Soldiers, crews, and small teams. Officers and NCOs have a special training relationship; their training responsibilities complement each other. This relationship spans all echelons and types of organizations. Noncommissioned officers are usually an organization's most experienced trainers.
- **Train to standard.** Army training is performed to standard. Leaders prescribe tasks with their associated standards that ensure their organization is capable of accomplishing its doctrinal or assigned mission. A standard is the minimum proficiency required to accomplish a task under a set of conditions.
- **Train as you will fight.** "Fight" includes lethal and nonlethal skills in decisive action. "Train as you will fight" means training under the conditions of expected, anticipated, or plausible OEs.
- **Train while operating.** Training continues when a unit is engaged in operations. Combat builds experience but not necessarily effectiveness. To adapt to constantly changing situations, units continue to train even in the midst of campaigns.
- **Train fundamentals first.** Fundamentals include warrior tasks and battle drills as well as METL tasks. Company-level units establish the foundation. They focus their training on individual

and small-unit skills. These tasks typically cover basic soldiering, drills, marksmanship, fitness, and military occupational specialty proficiency.

- **Train to develop operational adaptability.** Although planning is critical to successful training, circumstances may cause plans to change. Leaders prepare for personnel turbulence and equipment shortages even though the Army Forces Generation (ARFORGEN) System tries to ensure personnel and equipment objectives are met before training begins.
- **Understand the operational environment.** Commanders understand the OE and how it affects training. They replicate operational conditions, including anticipated variability, in training. The essence of the principle is to replicate conditions of the OE as part of training to standard.
- **Train to sustain.** Units must be able to operate continuously while deployed. Essential for continuous operations, sustainment is an integral part of training.
- **Train to maintain.** Commanders allocate time for units to maintain themselves and their equipment to standard during training events. This time includes scheduled and routine equipment maintenance periods and assembly area operations. Leaders train their subordinates to appreciate the importance of maintaining their equipment. Organizations tend to perform maintenance during operations to the standards they practice in training.
- **Conduct multiechelon and concurrent training.** Multiechelon training is a technique that allows for the simultaneous training of more than one echelon on different or complementary tasks. It is the most efficient way to train, especially with limited resources. It requires synchronized planning and coordination by commanders and other leaders at each affected echelon.

### **Principles of Leader Development**

1-10. Leader development is deliberate, continuous, and progressive, spanning a leader's entire career. Leader development comprises training and education gained in schools, the learning and experiences gained while assigned to organizations and the individual's own self-development.

1-11. Every Army leader is responsible for the professional development of subordinate leaders, military and civilian, and for building and sustaining the leader characteristics and skills. (Refer to FM 6-22 for more information.) Troop commanders are responsible for leader development of subordinates and are every leader's top priority. Effective training and

education build good leaders, and good leaders develop and execute effective training and education in schools and units. The experience gained during assignments puts the training and education into practice and provides the skills and knowledge leaders need to be versatile, adaptable, well-rounded, competent professionals. The Army's principles of leader development are:

- **Lead by example.** Leaders are role models. To demonstrate good leadership is to teach good leadership. Everything a leader does and says is scrutinized, analyzed, and often imitated. The example set by commanders influences the thoughts and attitudes of their subordinates, their families, and their peers. A good example positively influences the development of subordinates.
- **Take responsibility for developing subordinate leaders.** Commanders take responsibility for developing subordinate leaders. They directly observe, assess, and provide honest informal and formal feedback to subordinates. They discuss ways to sustain and improve leader skills, abilities, behaviors, and knowledge with subordinate leaders as often as needed, and ensure subordinates undergo experiences that prepare them for success, improve their adaptability, and prepare them for future responsibilities. They ensure their subordinates attend professional military education at the right time in their careers and functional training to make them effective leaders in their units of assignment.
- **Create a learning environment for subordinate leaders.** Leaders learn in an environment conducive to growth. Growth occurs best in environments that provide subordinates with opportunities to overcome obstacles and make difficult decisions. Commanders encourage their subordinates to seek challenging assignments, and commanders underwrite subordinates' honest mistakes. Learning comes from both successes and failures. Leaders must feel comfortable taking risks and trying new approaches to training. An environment that allows subordinate leaders to make honest—as opposed to repeated or careless—mistakes without prejudice is essential to leader development.
- **Train leaders in the art and science of mission command.** Commanders approach mission command training from two perspectives. First, they train themselves and their subordinates on how to conduct operations using mission command. (Refer to ADP 3-0 and ADP 6-0 for more information.) Second, they follow the principles of mission command in UTM. Specifically, they tell their subordinates the purpose for training and the end

state they expect from it, but they leave the determination of how to achieve the end state to the subordinate. As appropriate, they provide guidance requested by the subordinate leader. Employing mission command in training follows the principle of “train as you will fight.” Using mission command principles improves not only mission command skills, but it also encourages risk-taking, initiative, and creativity.

- **Train to develop adaptive leaders.** The Army continues to succeed under the most challenging conditions because Soldiers and Army civilians adapt to unexpected situations. Operational adaptability begins in the schools and is then put into practice during tough, realistic training situations—well before leaders are engaged in decisive action. Knowing that changes occur, effective commanders plan for it and develop potential contingency plans to mitigate the effects of change. Effective commanders also look for indicators that change is about to occur so they can ease the transition effects. Placing subordinate leaders into changing, unfamiliar, and uncomfortable situations in training helps foster operational adaptability. The lessons they learn help develop intuition, confidence, and the ability to think on their feet. The Army trains leaders for their next position before they assume it. Cross-training provides unit depth and flexibility and builds leader confidence.
- **Train leaders to think critically and creatively.** The Army develops leaders able to solve difficult, complex problems. Leaders should be able to recognize the issue, quickly ask the right questions, consider a variety of alternative solutions, and develop effective solutions. They should be comfortable making decisions with minimal information. (Refer to ADP 5-0 for more information.)
- **Train leaders to know their subordinates and their families.** Every commander should know his subordinates at least two levels down—their strengths, weakness, and capabilities. An effective leader maximizes a subordinate’s strengths and helps him overcome weaknesses. Similarly, an effective leader provides advice, counsel, and support as subordinate leaders develop their own subordinates. Family well-being is essential to unit and individual readiness. The Army trains leaders to know and help not only the subordinates, but also their families. Training ensures subordinate leaders recognize the importance of families and are adept at helping individuals solve family issues and sustain sound relationships.

## **UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT**

1-12. Unit training management is the process used by Army leaders to identify training requirements and subsequently plan, prepare, execute, and assess training. UTM provides a systematic way of managing time and resources and of meeting training objectives through purposeful training activities.

1-13. The commander's role in training focuses on determining the tasks the unit trains based on the mission. Unit leaders understand the unit's mission and the expected operational conditions to replicate in training. From this, the commander identifies collective tasks to train and the associated risks of not training other collective tasks to proficiency. The conditions are described in the higher unit's training and leader development guidance, or are likely to be encountered in a mission. The commander visualizes the unit's required state of readiness for the mission and the training necessary to achieve METL proficiency, given the commander's assessment of current task proficiency. The commander describes the training plan in training and leader development guidance or operation orders and directs its execution. By participating in and overseeing training and listening to feedback from subordinates, commanders assess the unit's METL proficiency and whether the training being conducted contributes to mission readiness.

1-14. Unit training management is the practical application of the training doctrine. The UTM information contained in ADP 7-0 supersedes FM 7-1.

1-15. ADP 7-0 and UTM are posted within the Army Training Network (ATN). The ATN is an Internet website that provides best practices, examples, tools, and lessons learned. It also provides a wealth of other training resources to include the latest training news, information, products and links to other Army training resources.

1-16. These references are linked and designed to be used in concert as a digital resource. ADP 7-0 provides the intellectual framework of what Army training is, while UTM provides the practical how-to of planning, preparing, executing, and assessing training in detail. The ATN, as the digital portal to both documents, additionally provides a wealth of other training resources to include the latest training news, information, products and links to other Army training resources.

## **ARMY FORCE GENERATION**

1-17. Army force generation (ARFORGEN) is a process that progressively builds unit readiness over time during predictable periods of availability to provide trained, ready, and cohesive units prepared for operational deployments. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.)



1-18. ARFORGEN drives UTM within the Army. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.) Unit training management is the process used by Army leaders to identify training requirements and subsequently plan, prepare, execute, and assess training. Army UTM provides a systematic way of managing time and resources and of meeting training objectives through purposeful training activities.

1-19. The Army prepares and provides campaign capable, expeditionary forces through ARFORGEN, which applies to Regular Army (RA) and Reserve Component (RC) units (Army National Guard and U.S. Army Reserve).

1-20. ARFORGEN takes each unit through a three-phased readiness cycle (known as pools): reset, train/ready, and available. The reset, train/ready, and available force pools provide the framework for the structured progression of increased readiness in ARFORGEN. (Refer to AR 350-1 for more information.) The force pools are defined as follows:

- **Reset force pool.** Units enter the reset force pool when they redeploy from long-term operations or complete their window for availability in the available force pool. The RA units remain in the reset force pool for at least 6 months, and RC units remain in the reset force pool for at least 12 months. Units in the reset force pool have no readiness expectations.
- **Train/ready force pool.** A unit enters the train/ready force pool following the reset force pool. The train/ready force pool is not of fixed duration. Units in the train/ready force pool increase training readiness and capabilities as quickly as possible, given the resource availability. Units may receive a mission to deploy during the train/ready force pool.
- **Available force pool.** Units focus on deployment and training to sustain METL fundamentals and correct any operational deficiencies. Units in the available force pool are at the highest state of training and readiness capability and are ready to deploy when directed. The available force pool window for availability is one year.

1-21. Units move from the available force pool to the reset force pool following a deployment or the end of their designated window of availability.

## SECTION III – OTHER TRAINING CONSIDERATIONS

1-22. In addition to understanding the ATS and UTM, commanders should also consider—

- Operational environment.
- Decisive action operations.
- Training products.

### OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

1-23. An OE is a composite of the conditions, circumstances, and influences that affect the employment of military forces and bear on the decisions of the unit commander. The complex nature of the OE requires commanders to simultaneously combine offensive, defensive, and stability or civil support tasks to accomplish missions domestically and abroad. (Refer to ADP 3-0 for more information.)

### OPERATIONAL VARIABLES

1-24. Troop commanders and other leaders analyze and describe the OE in terms of operational variables. Commanders continually monitor their operational environment at the tactical level consistent with mission variables. They apply the military aspects of terrain as a means of protecting the force. Commanders also find it useful to use the operational environment variables as a method to analyze information. Information is used to clarify the evolving operational, tactical, and criminal threat picture for commanders through pattern analysis and the information assessment process (IAP). The troop must be trained, adaptable, and ready to operate effectively on short notice. It must possess a wide range of skills, proficiencies, and capabilities to function effectively in any OE.

1-25. These operational variables are easily remembered using political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, and time (PMESII-PT). (Refer to ADP 3-0 for more information.)

### MISSION VARIABLES

1-26. Operational variables may be too broad for tactical planning. Upon receipt of a warning order or mission, commanders and leaders should narrow their focus to six mission variables. Mission variables are those aspects of the OE that directly affect a mission. They outline the situation as it applies a specific Army unit. Mission variables are mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available and civil considerations (METT-TC). (Refer to ADP 3-0 for more information.) The variables are defined as follows:

- **Mission.** The mission is the task, together with the purpose, that clearly indicates the action to be taken and the reason therefore. (Refer to JP 1-02 for more information.) Commanders analyze a mission in terms of specified tasks, implied tasks, and the commander's intent two echelons up.
- **Enemy.** This analysis includes not only the known enemy but also other threats to mission success. These include threats posed by multiple adversaries with a wide array of political, economic, religious, and personal motivations.
- **Terrain and weather.** Terrain and weather are natural conditions that profoundly influence operations. Terrain and weather are neutral; they favor neither side unless one is more familiar with—or better prepared to operate in—the physical environment. For tactical operations, terrain is analyzed using the five military aspects of terrain: observation, avenues of approach, key and decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment (OAKOC).
- **Troops and support available.** Troops and support available are the number, type, capabilities, and condition of available friendly troops and support. These include resources from joint, interagency, multinational, host nation, commercial (via contracting), and private organizations. They also include support provided by civilians.
- **Time available.** Time is critical to all operations. Controlling and exploiting it is central to initiative, tempo, and momentum. By exploiting time, commanders can exert constant pressure, control the relative speed of decisions and actions, and exhaust enemy forces.
- **Civil considerations.** Civil considerations reflect how the man-made infrastructure, civilian institutions, and attitudes and activities of civilian leaders, populations, and organizations within an area of operations influence the conduct of military operations. (Refer to ADP 3-0 for more information.) Civil considerations are areas, structures, capabilities, organizations, people, and events (ASCOPE).

## THREATS

1-27. Threats facing U.S. forces today vary. They are not always enemy forces dressed in uniforms that are easily identified as foe, aligned on a battlefield and opposite U.S. forces. Threats are nation-states, organizations, people, groups, or conditions that can damage or destroy life, vital resources, or institutions.

1-28. Threats are described in four major categories or challenges: traditional, irregular, catastrophic, and disruptive. While helpful in describing the threats the Army is likely to face, these categories do not define the nature of the adversary. Adversaries may use any and all of these challenges in combination to achieve the desired effect against the U.S. (Refer to ADP 3-0 for more information.) The four threats are defined as follows:

- **Traditional.** States employing recognized military capabilities and forces in understood forms of military competition and conflict.
- **Irregular.** Opponent employing unconventional, asymmetric methods and means to counter traditional U.S. advantages.
- **Catastrophic.** Enemy that involves the acquisition, possession, and use of weapons of mass destruction and effects.
- **Disruptive.** Enemy using new technologies that reduce U.S. advantages in key operational domains.

### Hybrid Threats

1-29. The term “hybrid threat” has recently been used to capture the seemingly increased complexity of operations and the multiplicity of actors involved. While the existence of innovative enemies is not new, today’s hybrid threats demand that the troop prepares for a range of possible threats simultaneously.

1-30. Hybrid threats are characterized by the combination of regular forces governed by international law, military tradition, and custom with irregular forces that are unregulated and as a result act with no restrictions on violence or targets for violence. This could include militias, terrorists, guerillas, and criminals. Such forces combine their abilities to use and transition between regular and irregular tactics and weapons. These tactics and weapons enable hybrid threats to capitalize on perceived vulnerabilities making them particularly effective.

## DECISIVE ACTION

1-31. An Infantry rifle company operates in a framework of decisive action. ADP 3-0 provides a discussion of decisive action which includes the elements of offensive, defensive, and stability or civil support.

1-32. Army forces conduct decisive and sustainable land operations through the simultaneous combination of offensive, defensive, and stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities) appropriate to the mission and environment. Army forces conduct regular and irregular warfare against conventional and hybrid threats.

**OFFENSE**

1-33. Offensive operations are conducted to defeat and destroy enemy forces and seize terrain, resources, and population centers. They include movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

**DEFENSE**

1-34. Defensive operations are conducted to defeat an enemy attack, gain time, economize forces, and develop conditions favorable for offensive and stability tasks. These operations include mobile, area, and retrograde defense.

**STABILITY OPERATIONS**

1-35. Stability operations are military missions, tasks, and activities conducted outside the United States to maintain or reestablish a safe and secure environment, and to provide essential governmental services, emergency infrastructure reconstruction, and humanitarian relief. They include five tasks:

- Establish civil security.
- Establish civil control.
- Restore essential services.
- Support to governance.
- Support to economic and infrastructure development.

1-36. Homeland defense support of civil authorities represents Department of Defense support to U.S. civil authorities for domestic emergencies, law enforcement support, and other domestic activities, or from qualifying entities for special events. Tasks include providing support for—

- Domestic disasters.
- Domestic chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives (CBRNE) incidents.
- Domestic civilian law enforcement agencies.
- Other designated support.

1-37. The simultaneous conduct of decisive action requires careful assessment, prior planning, and unit preparation as commanders shift their combinations of decisive action.

---

**Note.** For further information on decisive action refer to ADP 3-0.

---

**MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASK LIST**

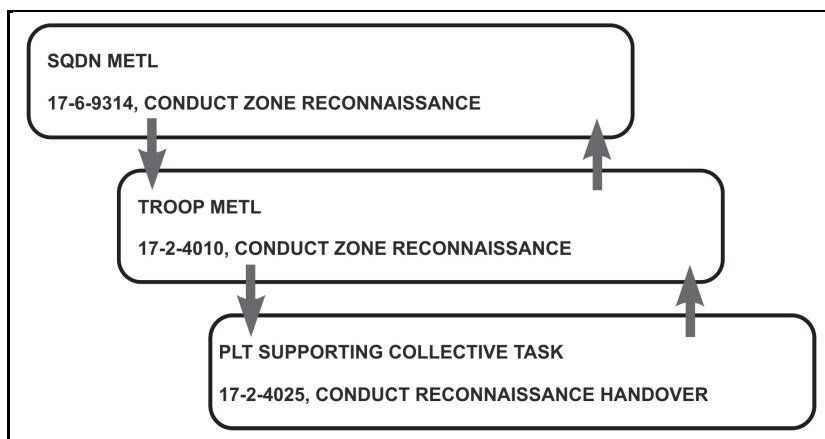
1-38. A METL is a list of collective tasks a unit must perform successfully to accomplish its mission. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.)

1-39. To meet the demands of decisive action, the Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) has standardized METL for brigades and above. This standardization ensures that like units deliver the same capabilities, and gives the Army the strategic flexibility to provide trained and ready forces to operational-level commanders. (See Figure 1-1.)

### **MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASK LIST DEVELOPMENT**

1-40. The commander starts with reviewing the squadron METL and training guidance. The commander determines what collective tasks, battle drills, and leader tasks support the squadron METL. The commander should include subordinate leaders in this task selection process because they determine which individual tasks support the METL tasks. Based on the commander's analysis and identification of collective tasks that support the squadron METL, the commander determines a training focus that supports the squadron commanders training guidance. At the completion of METL development, the commander determines—

- Mission-essential tasks (METs) that support the squadron METL.
- Individual tasks that support the METL tasks.
- Resources required for training to standards.



**Figure 1-1. Collective tasks supporting higher unit METL**

### **Commander's Analysis**

1-41. The commander initiates the METL development with an analysis of the squadron METL and training guidance, and he then identifies—

- The collective tasks, battle drills, and leader tasks the unit trains.
- The collective tasks the unit does not train and the risk for not training.

- An estimate of the time required to train.
- The conditions to train.
- Resources required.

***Identify Collective Tasks***

1-42. The commander and unit leader identifies the collective tasks, battle drills, and leader tasks to train and the estimated time required to train to proficiency. Additionally, the commander identifies those tasks the unit can accept risk for not training.

***Identify the Conditions***

1-43. The commander gains an understanding of the OE that the troop operates in and tries to replicate the training conditions if possible. The conditions determine what resources are needed to re-create the OE. The results of troop commander's analysis are used to frame desired conditions in general terms.

1-44. The commander, with input from the first sergeant (1SG), determines the scarce and unique resources needed to train the selected collective tasks and individual tasks in the conditions previously identified. The commander identifies those resources that require assistance from the squadron commander to obtain. Identifying these requirements now gives the squadron commander and staff time for arranging and de-conflicting resources or finding alternatives.

***Commander's Dialog***

1-45. The higher commander approves the unit's METL. The approval normally occurs during the commander's dialog. The commander's dialog is a professional discussion between the troop and squadron commanders that set the expectations for developing a training plan. The troop commanders' dialog is the culminating point of METL development. In general this event—

- Is conducted face-to-face.
- Sets expectations for planning troop training.
- Identifies any unit training readiness problems or risks.
- Sets expectations for the development of the troop training plan.
- Identifies the training risks for those tasks not trained.

1-46. Upon completion of this dialog, the troop commander has the necessary products to publish the troop METL and develop a training plan.

***Implementation Guidance***

1-47. The troop commander issues a document to the troop's officers and NCOs that summarizes the troop commander's dialog with the squadron

commander. This is done primarily face-to-face. It provides the troop officers and NCOs the necessary commander's guidance and training focus to develop platoon and squad training plans to achieve troop METL proficiency.

## **PLANNING TRAINING**

1-48. Training is formally planned at troop and above levels. Training plans take the collective tasks to train and the assessment of proficiency in those tasks, and translate them into training events based on the commander's visualized end state. There are two types of training plans: long-range and short-range.

1-49. Commanders continuously assess the status (manning, equipping, and training) of the unit during training, and modify the long range training plan. This builds unit cohesion and achieves required METL proficiency as units move through the ARFORGEN force pools. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.)

## **TRAINING PRODUCTS**

1-50. Troop commanders determine a training strategy for their unit and prepare training plans that enable the unit to be ready within the ARFORGEN process. Commanders develop training plans that enable them to attain proficiency in the METs needed to conduct decisive action under conditions in the OE.

1-51. There are several training products available that the commander can use to train his unit to METL proficiency based on the readiness requirements. Each training product has been designed and developed within TRADOC to meet specific training needs. Commanders should consider the use of LVCG when considering training products. The following training products can be used throughout the training process of planning, preparation, execution, and assessment of unit training:

- Collective and individual tasks.
- Unit task lists (UTLs).
- Combined arms training strategies (CATSs).
- Warfighter training support packages (WTSPs).

## **INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TASKS**

1-52. Both individual and collective tasks are performed during unit training in order to assess the proficiency of individuals and groups on their ability to perform the tasks to standard.



---

**Note.** This TC focuses on collective tasks and how they are used to support unit training and addresses individual tasks minimally.

---

### Individual Tasks

1-53. An individual task is a clearly defined, observable, and measurable activity accomplished by an individual. It is the lowest behavioral level in a job or duty that is performed for its own sake. An individual task supports one or more collective tasks or drills and often supports another individual task. Individual tasks can consist of both leader and staff tasks. The tasks are defined as follows:

- **Leader tasks.** This is an individual task (skill level 2 or higher) a leader performs that is integral to the performance of a collective task.
- **Staff tasks.** This is a clearly defined and measurable activity or action performed by a staff (collective) or a staff member (individual) of an organization who supports a commander in the exercise of unit mission command.

### Collective Tasks

1-54. A collective task is a clearly defined, observable, and measurable activity or action that requires organized team or unit performance, leading to the accomplishment of a mission or function. Collective task accomplishment requires the performance to standard of supporting individual or collective tasks. Collective tasks can consist of shared and unique tasks. The tasks are defined as follows:

- **Shared.** A shared collective task is a collective task that applies to or is performed by more than one type of unit. Since the task, conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures of shared collective tasks do not change, the collective task is trained and performed in the same way by all units that "share" the task.
- **Unique.** A unique collective task is a clearly defined, unit-specific collective task. For a collective task to be classified unique, no other unit or proponent (such as Infantry or engineers) may have the capability or requirement to perform the task. The designated proponent is solely responsible for the development and maintenance of a unique collective task.

1-55. Collective tasks are primarily performed in the operational domain, so the emphasis is on unit performance. Each collective task contains information that includes:

- **Assessment information.** Commanders can review the measures of performance and measures of success, and if the unit had

performed those previously, and what the assessment was when performed. If an assessment was conducted, this assessment can provide needed information advising if the unit has performed the tasks and is considered trained (T), partially trained (P), or untrained (U).

- **General information.** These can include task title and warfighting function.
- **Task data, conditions, and standards.**
- **Task attributes.** These can include task trained at night, under mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) conditions, and task steps.
- **Supporting information.** These can include products/references, individual tasks, drills, and collective tasks, and the prerequisite collective tasks.

### Unit Task Lists

1-56. The unit task list (UTL) is a product of mission analysis that identifies all of the collective tasks (shared and unique) that a unit is organized, manned and equipped to conduct. The UTL is produced for each unit with a table of organization and equipment (TOE)/modified TOE (MTOE) or table of distribution and allowance (TDA).

1-57. The UTL can include existing collective tasks, or collective tasks identified to be designed and developed. The UTL also provides the baseline for a unit combined arms training strategy (CATS). A training developer creates the UTL by linking collective tasks to those missions identified on the TOE. This process ensures that units train the appropriate tasks to required proficiency levels.

### Unit Task List Locations

1-58. An assembled UTL is located in Appendix A. The UTL is also maintained and accessed within the Digital Training Management System (DTMS).

### Digital Training Management System

1-59. The DTMS is a web-based training management system that allows the unit to conduct mission and METL development, training planning and management, and track unit training by implementing the doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures outlined in ADP 7-0.

### Combined Arms Training Strategy

1-60. The combined arms training strategy is the Army's overarching strategy for the current and future training of the force. It describes how the Army trains the total force to standard in the institution, unit, and through

self-development. It also identifies, quantifies, and justifies the training resources required to execute the training. Unit CATSs are built using the unit missions and the UTL, and are designed to reflect the METL. CATSs have replaced mission training plans (MTPs). CATSs provide a training path with recommendations of what and who to train. CATSs support the unit METL training and are synchronized with ARFORGEN.

### ***Types of CATS***

1-61. Combined arms training strategies are based on the unit's TOE mission (that support the METL), employment, capabilities, and functions. There are two types of CATSs: unit and functional.

### ***Unit CATS***

1-62. Unit CATSs are TOE-based and unique to a unit type. Unit CATS development considers organizational structure, METL, and doctrine to organize the unit's collective tasks in a strategy that provides a path for achieving task proficiency.

1-63. A CATS consists of a menu of task selections that provide a base strategy for unit commanders to plan, prepare, and assess training to provide a flexible training strategy. CATSs are also designed to train a capability with supporting training events and resources. The events are designed to be trained in a logical sequence, starting with the lowest echelon and adding echelons as the events get progressively more complex. The culminating, or run event, for a CATS is usually the highest level event designed to train and/or evaluate the entire unit.

1-64. Unit CATSs provide commanders training strategies from which they develop their unit training plan to achieve collective task proficiency, as well as support the ARFORGEN phases. These strategies are flexible and are not intended to constrain commanders but rather provide them with a menu of core mission/capabilities-based training events. They provide commanders with a method to train all tasks that a unit is designed to perform and estimate the required resources to support event-driven training. Unit CATSs provide commanders with tools to plan, prepare for, and evaluate unit training.

### ***Functional CATS***

1-65. Functional CATSs address a functional capability common to multiple units and echelons and they supplement the unit CATS. Strategies may be based on missions or functions performed by most units that are not unique to a specific unit type, or they may be developed to train warfighting functions or operational themes that were not incorporated into unit CATS. Two examples of functional CATS are mission command (currently listed

in CATS as command and control), and force protection. Functional CATSs contain most of the same data elements as unit CATS.

### **Task Selections**

1-66. Task selections describe a specific capability/mission, and include collective tasks that support developing those capabilities. Frequency of training and types of events that can be used to train the capability are also recommended.

1-67. Task selections are usually trained utilizing a series of crawl-walk-run events. Crawl-walk-run events provide options to commanders to accommodate training at the appropriate level of difficulty based on their training readiness assessment. Each event provides recommendations for who and how to train, and resources required to support that training.

1-68. The commander can consolidate the necessary collective and individual tasks determined to be trained to support the METs which helps to determine the time and resources needed to train these tasks to proficiency. A matrix showing the CATS task selections used within the reconnaissance troop that support the task groups of the unit's METL is located in Appendix C.

### **Training Events**

1-69. Commanders organize collective and individual tasks into standard Army training events. When conducted, they adhere to the principles of training mentioned earlier in this chapter.

1-70. The commander can also develop training events internally, such as classes, sergeants time training (STT), field training exercises (FTXs), situation training exercises (STXs), and combined arms live fire exercises (CALFEXs), when using the crawl-walk-run training path provided within CATS. A troop's progress through its training plan is based on time available and the commander's assessment of task proficiency using the doctrinal process of assessing the training events.

### **CATS Locations**

1-71. Combined arms training strategies are available digitally from both DTMS and the ATN. In digital format, the CATS provides numerous links to training materials which can assist the commander and unit training managers to develop the commander's plan and to conduct training.

### **Warfighter Training Support Packages**

1-72. The warfighter training support package (WTSP) is a complete, stand alone, exportable training package, integrating training products and materials needed to train one or more collective tasks and supporting critical individual tasks. WTSPs are task-based information packages that provide

structured situational training scenarios for LVCG unit or institutional training.

1-73. Warfighter training support packages assist commanders in training their unit's METL. This is accomplished by basing the WTSP on a revised Caspian Sea Scenario for differing echelons. Each WTSP includes materials to support planning, preparing, executing and assessing training exercises at respective echelons. The WTSP can aid the commander throughout the training management of their unit during various training exercises.

### **Warfighter Training Support Packages Locations**

1-74. Warfighter training support packages are exportable for use by the unit unlike CATS and UTLs that can be accessed through DTMS or the ATN. Reconnaissance troop WTSPs are located within the Maneuver Center of Excellence, Collective Training Branch website on Army Knowledge Online (AKO). To access this website:

- Log into AKO.
- Copy and paste the Web address, (<https://www.us.army.mil/suite/grouppage/130823>), into the address bar.
- Select enter.
- Select desired WTSP.

## **LIVE, VIRTUAL, CONSTRUCTIVE, AND GAMING TRAINING**

1-75. Troop commanders can use LVCG training to enhance training, replicate battlefield conditions, balance resources, and sustain readiness. Commanders consider each of these to dictate the degree of simulation they plan for their unit during training events. Utilizing simulations within their unit training enables commanders to maximize many of the principles of training and to manage scarce resources.

### **LIVE**

1-76. Live training is executed in field conditions using tactical equipment. It involves real people operating real systems. Live training may be enhanced by training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS) and tactical engagement simulation (TES) to simulate combat conditions. Use of simulation is used to improve a unit's marksmanship caliber.

1-77. The Initial Homestation Instrumented Training System (I-HITS) provides position location and weapons effects data for real-time exercise monitoring and AAR capability. The Instrumentable-Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (I-MILES) has replaced the basic Multiple

Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) that is currently fielded. This new system provides the real-time casualty effects necessary for tactical engagements training in direct-fire, force-on-force, and instrumented training scenarios.

---

*Note.* No enhanced training can duplicate firing live rounds.

---

### **VIRTUAL**

1-78. Virtual training is executed using computer-generated battlefields in simulators with the approximate characteristics of tactical weapon systems and vehicles. It exercises motor control, decisionmaking, and communication skills. Sometimes called “human-in-the-loop training,” it involves real people operating simulated systems. Soldiers being trained practice the skills needed to operate actual equipment.

1-79. An example of virtual training is the close combat tactical trainer (CCTT). This system is equipped with the latest Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) in support of training the digital force. Dismounted Soldier is part of the CCTT program. It provides the capability to train Soldiers and units in all three elements of decisive action described in ADP 3-0.

### **CONSTRUCTIVE**

1-80. Constructive training uses computer models and simulations to exercise command and staff functions. It involves simulated people operating simulated systems.

1-81. Constructive training can be conducted by units from platoon through echelons above corps. A command post (CP) exercise is an example of constructive training. Other examples are Multi-User Online Virtual Exercise (MOVE) and hands-on-trainer (HOT).

### **GAMING**

1-82. Gaming is the use of technology employing commercial or government off-the-shelf, multigenre games in a realistic, semi-immersive environment to support education and training. The military uses gaming technologies to create capabilities to help train individuals and organizations.

1-83. Gaming can enable individual, collective, and multiechelon training. It can operate in a stand-alone environment or be integrated with live, virtual, or constructive enablers. Employed in a realistic, semi-immersive environment, gaming can simulate operations and capabilities. An example

of fully interactive, three-dimensional gaming is Virtual Battlespace System 2 (VBS2), a mission rehearsal tool for Soldiers to practice tactics, techniques, and procedures in a synthetic environment prior to conducting an actual mission. Another example is the DARWARS Ambush designed for convoy operation training, platoon-level mounted Infantry tactics, and dismounted operations. Urban Simulation (URBANSIM) and Command Post of the Future (CPOF) are also virtual training gaming aids.

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## Chapter 2

# Crosswalks and Outlines

This chapter provides the reconnaissance troop commander a METL crosswalk, and the METL supporting collective task training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs). Each of these items can assist the commander and leaders with training within the troop.

### SECTION I – METL CROSSWALK

2-1. Table 2-1 contains the primary references for conducting decisive actions—offensive, defensive, and stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities). For more information on how to plan, prepare, and execute the collective tasks and drills in this chapter refer to the following references in Table 2-1.

2-2. Commanders focus their training efforts on training collective tasks that support the squadron METL. One of the many responsibilities of the commander is to determine which tasks to train. These crosswalks are tools the commander can use as a starting point for selecting the supporting collective task to squadron METL. The supporting collective task to the squadron METL crosswalk for mounted and dismounted troops and the reconnaissance squadron, R & S brigade are examples developed by the Directorate of Training and Doctrine, MCoE. (See Table 2-2 and Table 2-3.) These crosswalks identify those tasks that support the squadron MET. The supporting collective tasks that support the squadron METL are aligned on the left side of the matrix. The “X” identifies the supporting collective tasks that support the MET.

Table 2-1. Primary references for decisive actions

<b>Decisive Action</b>	<b>References</b>
Reconnaissance and Security Operations	FM 3-20.971, <i>Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop</i> ATTP 3-20.97, <i>Dismounted Reconnaissance Troop</i>
Stability Operations	FM 3-07, <i>Stability Operations</i>

Table 2-2. Example of a mounted and dismounted reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>			
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Security</b>		<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) *	X		X	X
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)	X		X	X
17-2-4011	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)	X		X	X

**Table 2-2. Example of a mounted and dismounted reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix (continued)**

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>			
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Security</b>	<b>Stability</b>	
<b>Task Title</b>		<b>Recon</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)	X			
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)		X		
17-2-0320	Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company)	X	X		
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)			X	X
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations			X	X
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians during Operations (Platoon-Company)			X	X

**Table 2-2. Example of a mounted and dismounted reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix (continued)**

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>			
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Security</b>		<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support	X	X	X	X
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	

**Table 2-2. Example of a mounted and dismounted reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix (continued)**

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>			
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Security</b>		<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties	X	X	X	X
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties	X	X	X	X
34-5-0471	Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR)	X	X	X	X
34-5-0470	Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations	X	X	X	X
34-5-0472	Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting	X	X	X	X

**\* Mounted reconnaissance troop only**

**Table 2-3. Example of a reconnaissance and surveillance brigade (R & S) reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix**

Reconnaissance Troop		METs and Task Groups					
		Conduct Reconnaissance			Security Operations		Stability
Task Number	Task Title	Zone Reconnaissance	Area Reconnaissance	Surveillance	Screen	Area Security	Public Order & Safety
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)	X				X	X
17-2-4011	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)	X				X	X
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X			
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)				X		
17-2-0320	Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	X		
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)					X	X

**Table 2-3. Example of a reconnaissance and surveillance brigade (R & S) reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix (continued)**

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>					
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>			<b>Security Operations</b>		<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Zone Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Area Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Surveillance</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations					X	X
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians during Operations (Platoon-Company)					X	X
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	X	X	
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)				X	X	X
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X	X	X	

**Table 2-3. Example of a reconnaissance and surveillance brigade (R & S) reconnaissance troop METL crosswalk matrix (continued)**

<b>Reconnaissance Troop</b>		<b>METs and Task Groups</b>					
		<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>			<b>Security Operations</b>		<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Zone Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Area Reconnaissance</b>	<b>Surveillance</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support					X	X
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X	X	
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties	X	X	X	X	X	X
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties	X	X	X	X	X	X
34-5-0471	Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR)	X	X	X	X	X	X
34-5-0470	Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X
34-5-0472	Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting	X	X	X	X	X	X



## SECTION II – TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

### INTRODUCTION

2-3. This section provides the supporting collective tasks in the form of T&EOs. All T&EOs support unit missions, and individual T&EOs may support multiple missions.

2-4. Leaders and Soldiers within the unit can use them as a reference on how to perform a task. Commanders and leaders may use them to identify subordinate unit supporting tasks. Observers or evaluators can use them to record and document the unit's task performance.

### STRUCTURE

2-5. Each T&EO provides the task conditions and standards. They also provide a series of task steps and performance measures that serve as a logical guide for performing the task. The task steps are generally sequential, but they may be performed concurrently, or even omitted, based on the mission variables of METT-TC. The unit's ability to accomplish the task steps and performance measures indicates whether or not it is executing the task to standard. Tables 2-1 and 2-2 list METL tasks by METs and task groups, with task title and numbers to that specific T&EO.

### FORMAT

2-6. Each T&EO displayed in this TC consists of the following:

- **Task.** This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
- **References.** These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first.
- **Condition.** The condition is a written statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- **Task standard.** States the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and understood by every Soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This establishes a common base line for unit performance.

- **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.
- **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the unit's performance of the task steps. When assessing training, evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.
- **Supporting collective tasks.** This is a clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (for example, task) that requires organized or unit performance, and leads to accomplishment of a mission.

### USE

2-7. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. For example, a T&EO may be used by an observer controller as an evaluation outline, or by a commander as a training outline.

**TASK:** Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4000)  
(FM 3-20.971) (FM 3-20.96)

**CONDITIONS:** During tactical operations, the unit receives an order directing it to conduct a route reconnaissance. The operations order specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established, and information is being passed according to the unit standing operations procedures (SOPs). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Maneuver and sustainment assets may be available to the unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts reconnaissance according to the commander's intent to gain and report detailed, timely information about specified route(s), lateral routes within the area of operations (AOs), and terrain to either side of the route(s) that the enemy/adversary could use to influence movement along that route. The information provided answered the commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs). The information was transmitted to elements using the communications system that allowed timely decisions by the commander and his higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<b>PLAN</b> *1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs). *2. The unit leader receives the mission from higher and issues a warning order (WARNO) normally containing at a minimum. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The mission or nature of the operation.</li> <li>The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>Units or elements participating in the operation.</li> <li>Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOP.</li> <li>The timeline for the operation.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. The unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs, and priority intelligence requirement (PIR) and develops a visualization of higher commander's plan.</p> <p>4. Unit leadership conducts troop-leading procedures to develop the order.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. The unit leader issues orders addressing the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Orientation to include line of departure (LD), boundaries, start point (SP), routes, release point (RP), and limit of advance (LOA).</li> <li>b. Enemy situation to include likely threat weapon systems' capability to affect the route.</li> <li>c. Pattern analysis of previous and most recent enemy activities and incidents along the planned route.</li> <li>d. Civilian situation to include as applicable— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unconventional forces to include militia and paramilitary forces.</li> <li>(2) Organized criminal factions and activities.</li> <li>(3) Factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known friendly, neutrals, and threats.</li> <li>(4) Dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(5) Needs of society.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Terrain to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation and fields of fire.</li> <li>(2) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Key and decisive terrain.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> <li>(5) Cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Weather effects on the condition and capabilities of soldiers and weapon systems, including trafficability, visibility, and munitions performance.</li> <li>g. Higher commander's intent to include focus for reconnaissance.</li> <li>h. Location, disposition, and missions of friendly forces in area.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Unit leader's intent that includes as a minimum—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Purpose of reconnaissance in relation to the higher mission.</li> <li>(2) Conditions that represent the desired end state for reconnaissance in respect to enemy, terrain, and civil considerations.</li> </ol> <p>j. Concept of the operation that describes as a minimum.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Focus and tempo for reconnaissance.</li> <li>(2) Elements to reconnoiter and/or classify the route(s), or portions of the route(s) based on enemy/adversary, number of obstructions, terrain, and time available.</li> <li>(3) Elements to conduct zone reconnaissance to the flanks of the route(s), provide security, and/or follow and support.</li> <li>(4) Actions in urban areas.</li> <li>(5) Actions on contact.</li> <li>(6) Requirements for HUMINT along route(s).</li> <li>(7) Graphic control measures support concept of operation.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Phase lines, contact points, checkpoints, and as required.</li> <li>(b) Lateral boundaries 2 to 5 kms to either side of the route(s) to define AO.</li> <li>(8) Priorities of fire and use of indirect fires.</li> <li>(9) Integration of additional assets into reconnaissance effort:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Tactical UAS reconnoiters key/restrictive terrain forward or to flanks.</li> <li>(b) Engineers assist with the classification of routes, bridges, overpasses, underpasses, culverts, tunnels, ford sites, and as needed, conduct any required breaches once breach sites have been secured by the combat elements.</li> <li>(c) Ground surveillance assets (ground surveillance radar [GSR], remotely monitored battlefield sensor systems) as needed.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(d) Chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) element reconnoiters for contamination and bypasses.</p> <p>(10) CCIRs.</p> <p>(11) Reconnaissance handover criteria.</p> <p>(12) Engagement criteria.</p> <p>(a) Size of enemy force.</p> <p>(b) Type of enemy unit.</p> <p>(c) Activity of enemy unit.</p> <p>(13) Bypass criteria.</p> <p>(14) Coordination with higher HQ reaction force.</p> <p>(15) Coordination tasks with flank units and other forces.</p> <p>(16) ROE.</p> <p>(17) Likely follow-on mission and transition instructions.</p> <p>k. Priorities and description of support operations.</p> <p>(1) Casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) or medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).</p> <p>(2) Emergency resupply.</p> <p>(3) Vehicle recovery and maintenance.</p> <p>l. Movement of commander.</p> <p>m. Unit leadership moves to maintain communications with higher headquarters and subordinates.</p> <p>6. Prior to departure, unit coordinates time and location for departure, composition, and route(s) for the reconnaissance with all units in AO and on flanks.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>7. Unit accomplishes the following tasks according to the reconnaissance focus or unless otherwise directed:</p> <p>a. Reconnoiter and determine trafficability of the route.</p> <p>(1) Type of route:</p> <p>(a) Highway.</p> <p>(b) Road.</p> <p>(c) Street.</p> <p>(d) Trail.</p> <p>(e) Cross-country.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Classification of the route, checking for height, width, and weight restrictions to determine the appropriate class.</p> <p>(3) Seasonal limitations of the route.</p> <p>(4) Rate of movement the route will support.</p> <p>(5) Location and type of any critical points.</p> <p>b. Find, report, and clear (within capabilities) any enemy elements that can influence movement along the route according to engagement criteria.</p> <p>c. Reconnoiter routes approaching and inside urban areas.</p> <p>d. Reconnoiter lateral routes.</p> <p>e. Inspect and assess bridges.</p> <p>(1) Establish security around bridge.</p> <p>(2) Inspect the bridge, looking for weather damage, structural damage, and/or possible threat/adversary-emplaced demolitions.</p> <p>(3) As a minimum, conduct a hasty classification of the bridge.</p> <p>(4) Submit a bridge report (BRIDGEREP) to higher. Report includes the following:</p> <p>(a) Type and location. (For long tunnels, report both entrance and exit locations.)</p> <p>(b) Overall length.</p> <p>(c) Width of roadway.</p> <p>(d) Height restrictions.</p> <p>(e) Length and number of spans.</p> <p>(f) Computed classification.</p> <p>(g) Bypass locations.</p> <p>f. Locate fords or crossings sites near all bridges on the route.</p> <p>g. Inspect and assess overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</p> <p>h. Reconnoiter defiles.</p> <p>i. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers.</p> <p>j. Locate bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</p> <p>k. Determine the type and volume of traffic on the route.</p> <p>l. Update CCIRs.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>ASSESS</b> 8. Commander adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations. a. Actions on contact. b. To answer the CCIRs and/or specific SIRs. c. To acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs). 9. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. 10. Unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step.		

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
171-121-4050	Evaluate a Bridge
171-121-4062	Issue an Oral Operation Order/Fragmentary Order

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/ For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-2-3092	Prepare for a Suspected Vehicle-Borne Improvised Explosive Device (VBIED)/Person-Borne IED (PBIED) Attack (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-6-1006	Plan for Counter-IED (C-IED) Operations (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
17-3-4012	Reconnoiter an Obstacle/Restriction
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9503	React to Ambush (Far)
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs



**TASK:** Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4010)

(FM 3-20.971)

(FM 3-20.96)

(FM 3-20.98)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a zone reconnaissance from the line of departure. The operations order specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established, and information is being passed according to the Standing Operating Procedures (SOP). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional assets may be available to the unit. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task may be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the zone reconnaissance according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or the higher commander's guidance. The unit gains and reports detailed, timely information concerning all threat forces, infrastructure, and terrain within a zone defined by boundaries. Reconnaissance tempo enables the unit to complete its mission based on the higher HQ time constraints, information requirements and capabilities of the unit. The unit reports information that answers the commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs) using the communications system that allows timely decisions by the commander and his higher HQ. The unit complies with the rules of engagement (ROE).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The zone reconnaissance mission.</li> <li>The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>Units or elements participating in the zone reconnaissance.</li> <li>Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li> <li>The timeline for the zone reconnaissance.</li> </ol> <p>*3. The unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs, and priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and develops a visualization of higher HQ plan.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) to develop the order.</p> <p>*5. The unit leader coordinates with the higher HQ to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis using maps and other terrain products.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinates with units to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis.</li> <li>Identifies internal resources to be used in the collection effort.</li> <li>Updates the common operating picture (COP), if equipped, providing current situational awareness by supplying timely and accurate information for intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and the planning process.</li> </ol> <p>*6. Unit leader considers the following when planning for a zone reconnaissance mission:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Friendly force considerations, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mission of adjacent and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(2) Reconnaissance objectives of higher HQ and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(3) CCIRs of higher HQ and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(4) Higher commander's reconnaissance focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</li> <li>(5) Missions of surveillance and reconnaissance elements operating within the unit's area of operation (AO).</li> <li>(6) Capabilities and limitations of other surveillance and reconnaissance elements that are attached to the unit.</li> </ul> <p>b. Enemy situation, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type and capabilities of likely enemy weapon systems.</li> <li>(2) Special equipment if available.</li> <li>(3) Higher HQ enemy courses of action (ECOAs), including a situational template (SITTEMP) depicting composition, known and templated dispositions, and potential engagement areas (EAs).</li> </ul> <p>c. Terrain and weather considerations, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Effective ranges of weapon systems.</li> <li>(2) Aviation assets for reconnaissance, transport, resupply, fire support, and medical evacuation.</li> <li>(3) Effects on cross-country mobility.</li> </ul> <p>d. Civil considerations, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Locations, functions, and jurisdictions of government agencies and offices.</li> <li>(2) Composition and disposition of regional/local military, paramilitary, and law enforcement organizations.</li> <li>(3) Locations of police stations, armories or barracks, encampments, weapons holding areas, and staging areas.</li> </ul> <p>e. Implements and integrates higher HQ surveillance and reconnaissance plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Integrates the seven reconnaissance fundamentals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures continuous reconnaissance.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that no reconnaissance assets are kept in reserve.</li> <li>(3) Orients on the reconnaissance objective(s).</li> <li>(4) Reports all information rapidly and accurately.</li> <li>(5) Retains freedom to maneuver.</li> <li>(6) Gains and maintains threat contact.</li> <li>(7) Develops the situation rapidly.</li> </ol> <p>g. Develops/refines SIRs, reconnaissance objectives and assigns tasks to subordinate elements.</p> <p>h. Determines tempo of the reconnaissance effort and locations where more deliberate reconnaissance is required according to last time information of value (LTIOV).</p> <p>i. Integrates and synchronizes air and ground reconnaissance operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assigns zones for the units.</li> <li>(2) Prioritizes critical tasks to be performed by subordinate elements.</li> <li>(3) Integrates use of air reconnaissance assets and unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), if available.</li> </ol> <p>j. Integrates and synchronizes warfighting functions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Refines fire support plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Refines fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) that support the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Coordinates fire support to cover the reconnaissance zone.</li> <li>(c) Assigns priority of fire or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Coordinates with engineers to assist with classification of bridges, overpasses, culverts, fords, routes, obstacles, infrastructure, environment, and other classifications related to area damage control in the designated zone.</li> <li>(3) Plans chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) support.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(a) If attached or OPCON, integrates CBRN reconnaissance assets into the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Ensures CBRN assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of CBRN.</p> <p>(c) Plans for immediate and thorough decontamination based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.</p> <p>(4) Plans sustainment support.</p> <p>(a) Integrates movement and positioning of sustainment assets with the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Anticipates timely resupply of Classes I, III, and V.</p> <p>(c) Plans and coordinates casualty evacuation.</p> <p>k. Conducts composite risk management.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*7. The unit leader issues the order.</p> <p>8. Prior to departure, unit informs other units in area and on flanks of times and location for departure, composition, zone(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. Unit moves to and deploys along the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>a. Moves quickly to LD and reports "set" to the element leader.</p> <p>b. Deploys in the organization specified by the element leader or OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Deploys using specified formation/ techniques.</p> <p>d. Unit leader reports when in position to the commander when element leaders report they are set.</p> <p>e. Conducts coordination with supporting maneuver and/or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</p> <p>f. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on flanks unless directed otherwise.</p> <p>10. Unit executes the LD and conducts tactical movement in the zone.</p> <p>a. Reports to the unit leader (as applicable).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Deploys in the zone according to OPORD/FRAGO and/or considering the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>c. Incorporates information from reconnaissance and surveillance assets into the operation.</p> <p>d. Uses effective control measures to enhance situational awareness of the unit.</p> <p>e. Clears or conducts surveillance of assigned checkpoints and named areas of interest (NAIs) within the area of responsibility and reports to the unit leader.</p> <p>f. Unit leader reports to the commander execution of all control measures within the assigned area of responsibility.</p> <p>g. If required, executes control measures as directed by the unit leader.</p> <p>h. Unit leader, as applicable, attempts to keep elements on line to prevent gaps in the unit's sector.</p> <p>i. Coordinates movement with supporting maneuver or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</p> <p>j. Unit, if given a series of reconnaissance objectives, conducts tactical movement to bypass enemy security forces in sector according to bypass criteria.</p> <p>k. Employs dismounted Soldiers to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:  <b>NOTE:</b> Leaders of mounted units should plan on dismounting Soldiers for detailed reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Detailed reconnaissance is required (such as to observe an NAI, clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines).</p> <p>(2) Gathering HUMINT from local populace using indigenous language if possible.</p> <p>(3) Stealth is required.</p> <p>(4) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.</p> <p>(5) Vehicle movement through a zone is restricted by terrain.</p> <p>(6) Time is available.</p> <p>(7) Security is the primary concern.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>l. Conducts listening halts at danger areas (woods, built-up areas, defiles, severely restricted terrain) based on METT-TC.</p> <p>11. Unit identifies and reports all threat forces within the zone according to the focus for reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies threat elements.</li> <li>b. Conducts actions on contact. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill.</li> <li>(2) Develops the situation while maintaining sufficient combat power to continue the mission.</li> <li>(3) Chooses a course of action (COA) that allows freedom of maneuver and focuses on the reconnaissance objective.</li> <li>(4) Execute selected COA.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The following step may be done in conjunction with step 10.b.(3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(5) Recommends a COA to higher commander.</li> <li>c. Collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces, factions, and other entities within the zone (as applicable), including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Size.</li> <li>(2) Activities.</li> <li>(3) Location.</li> <li>(4) Unit identification.</li> <li>(5) Time and date.</li> <li>(6) Equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>12. Unit collects and reports terrain information according to the focus for reconnaissance and assigned PIR/SIR.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Unit leader determines trafficability of major routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sends route report (ROUTEREP) to the commander (if required).</li> <li>(2) Submits route overlay to the commander (if required).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the zone.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Gathers intervisibility line information.</p> <p>(2) Reconnoiters all terrain within the zone to the lateral boundaries.</p> <p>c. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near assigned bridges within the zone.</p> <p>d. Locates and classifies all bridges within the zone.</p> <p>e. Locates and classifies all tunnels and underpasses within the zone.</p> <p>f. Locates minefields, obstacles, and urban areas within the zone.</p> <p>g. Determines existence and extent of any CBRN contamination within the zone.</p> <p>h. Locates bypasses around urban areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas within the zone.</p> <p>i. Submits appropriate reports (such as ROUTEREP, crossing report [CROSSREP], bridge report [BRIDGEREP], obstacle, CBRN, bypass) to unit leader.</p> <p>13. Unit collects and reports information on the civilian populace and/or infrastructure according to the focus for reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Establishes and maintains contact with the local civilian and military leadership as directed.</p> <p>b. Identifies key municipal infrastructure, including utilities, sewage, and communications.</p> <p>c. Determines media outlets and publications.</p> <p>d. Identifies local organizations.</p> <p>e. Identifies local populace allegiances to factions, religious groups, or other organizations.</p> <p>*14. Unit leader adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations. The leader takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Action or reaction to chance contact.</p> <p>b. Answer the CCIRs and/or SIRs.</p> <p>c. Acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs).</p> <p>d. Takes action when directed by the higher commander.</p> <p>*15. Unit leader maintains control.</p> <p>a. Leader moves to best observe and influence operations and maintain communications with subordinate units.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Leader ensures appropriate CCIRs are answered.</p> <p>c. Leader ensures units receive orders and pertinent information.</p> <p>d. Unit conducts reconnaissance handover with other units/elements according to order and/or SOPs if required.</p> <p>e. Unit maintains communications with higher HQ.</p> <p>f. Leader reviews and consolidates zone overlay for correctness and completeness.</p> <p>g. Leader tracks, consolidates, and forwards sustainment reports to higher HQ according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>h. Leader tracks and disseminates positions and status of supporting units if applicable.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>16. Unit reports reconnaissance information according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Confirms or denies higher headquarters information requirements (CCIRs and SIRs).</p> <p>b. Provides additional information that may impact operations to include:</p> <p>(1) Source information to include power and/or influence.</p> <p>(2) Approach routes to urban areas for mounted and dismounted forces.</p> <p>(3) Entry points or points of penetration into urban areas.</p> <p>(4) Danger (hazard) areas.</p> <p>(5) Needs of society.</p> <p>17. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>18. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

#### Task Number

052-192-1270

#### Task Title

React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED)  
(Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)

052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
171-121-4034	Coordinate With Adjacent Units
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-123-1300	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
171-123-1301	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone/Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0055	Conduct Actions on Contact at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0016	Conduct Route Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0025	Conduct Patrolling at Company-Troop Level
171-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
171-121-4079	Send a Situation Report (SITREP)

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Titles</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/ For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
09-2-2000	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9503	React to Ambush (Far)
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4011)

(FM 3-20.98)

(FM 3-20.971)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) moves to a specific location and conducts an area reconnaissance. The OPORD specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established and information is being passed according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional assets may be available to the unit. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the area reconnaissance according to the SOPs, the order, and/or the higher commander's guidance. The unit gains and reports detailed information on specified areas, objectives, or danger areas and timely information concerning all enemy forces, infrastructure, and terrain within the area. The unit also identifies source information of power/influence and the needs of society as necessary. Reconnaissance tempo enables the unit to complete its mission based on the higher HQ time constraints, information requirements and capabilities of the unit. The unit reports information that answers the commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs) using the communications system that allows timely decisions by the commander and higher HQ. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct an area reconnaissance and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tentative timeline for the operation, including the latest time for beginning the area reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the operation.</li> <li>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; any initial movement; initiation of surveillance, reconnaissance tasks, and the CCIRs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*2. Unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs and priority intelligence requirement (PIR).</p> <p>*3. Unit leader conducts TLPs to develop the order.</p> <p>*4. Unit leader coordinates with higher HQ to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis.</p> <p>a. Identifies internal resources to be used in the collection effort.</p> <p>b. Uses company intelligence support team (CoIST), to update the common operational picture (COP), if equipped, providing current situational awareness by supplying timely and accurate information for intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and the planning process.</p> <p>*5. Unit leader plans the area reconnaissance mission.</p> <p>a. Leader reviews and considers the following when planning for an area reconnaissance mission:</p> <p>(1) Friendly force consideration, including the following:</p> <p>(a) Mission adjacent and follow-on forces.</p> <p>(b) Reconnaissance objectives of the unit and follow-on forces.</p> <p>(c) CCIRs of the unit and follow-on forces.</p> <p>(d) Higher commander's reconnaissance focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</p> <p>(e) Mission of collection assets operating within the unit's area of operation (AO) but not under the unit's control.</p> <p>(f) Capabilities and limitations of other collection elements.</p> <p>(2) Enemy situation, including the following:</p> <p>(a) Type and capabilities of likely enemy weapon systems, night vision devices (NVDs) and related systems and surveillance radar.</p> <p>(b) Special equipment, such as body armor and unattended ground sensors (UGSSs), if available.</p> <p>(c) Unit's enemy courses of action (COAs), including a situation templates depicting composition, known and template dispositions, and potential engagement areas (EAs).</p> <p>(3) Terrain and weather considerations:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(a) Effects on effective weapons ranges and NVDs.</p> <p>(b) Effects on aviation assets for reconnaissance, transport, resupply, and medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).</p> <p>(c) Effects on cross-country mobility.</p> <p>(d) Effects on civil functions and services.</p> <p>(4) Civil considerations, including the following:</p> <p>(a) Locations, functions, and jurisdictions of government agencies, offices, and political party headquarters.</p> <p>(b) Composition and disposition of regional/local military, paramilitary, and law enforcement organizations.</p> <p>(c) Locations of police stations, armories or barracks, encampments, weapons holding areas, and staging areas.</p> <p>(d) Descriptions of uniforms, insignias, vehicles, markings, and equipment if applicable.</p> <p>(e) Location of power generation facilities.</p> <p>(f) Locations of communications networks and media outlets.</p> <p>b. Implements and integrates higher HQ surveillance and reconnaissance plan.</p> <p>c. Integrates the seven reconnaissance fundamentals.</p> <p>(1) Ensures continuous reconnaissance.</p> <p>(2) Ensures that no reconnaissance assets are kept in reserve.</p> <p>(3) Orients on the reconnaissance objective(s).</p> <p>(4) Reports all information rapidly and accurately.</p> <p>(5) Retains freedom to maneuver.</p> <p>(6) Gains and maintains enemy contact.</p> <p>(7) Develops the situation rapidly.</p> <p>d. Develops/refines SIR reconnaissance objectives and assigns tasks to subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Determines tempo of the reconnaissance effort and locations where more deliberate reconnaissance is required according to last time information of value (LTIOV).</p> <p>f. Integrates and synchronizes air and ground reconnaissance operations.</p> <p>(1) Assigns areas for the subordinate elements.</p> <p>(2) Prioritizes critical tasks to be performed by subordinate elements.</p> <p>(3) Integrates use of air reconnaissance assets and unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), if available.</p> <p>g. Integrates and synchronizes warfighting functions.</p> <p>(1) Refines fire support.</p> <p>(a) Refines fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) that support the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Coordinates fire support to cover the reconnaissance area.</p> <p>(c) Assigns priority of fire or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.</p> <p>(4) Plans chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) support.</p> <p>(a) If attached or under operational control (OPCON), integrates CBRN reconnaissance assets into the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Ensures CBRN assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of CBRN.</p> <p>(c) Plans for immediate and thorough decontamination based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.</p> <p>(5) Plans sustainment support.</p> <p>(a) Integrates movement and positioning of sustainment assets with the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Anticipates timely resupply of Classes I, III, and V.</p> <p>(c) Plans and coordinates casualty evacuation.</p> <p>h. Conducts composite risk management.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PREPARE</p> <p>*6. Unit leader organizes the reconnaissance force according to size, geography, physical infrastructure, and social dynamics of the area to be reconnoitered.</p> <p>*7. Unit leader identifies control measures needed during area reconnaissance to include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Graphic control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Line of departure (LD).</li> <li>(2) Lateral boundaries.</li> <li>(3) Limit of advance (LOA).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Movement coordination measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Phase lines.</li> <li>(2) Contact points.</li> <li>(3) Check points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>8. Prior to departure, unit informs other units in area and on flanks of times and location for departure, composition, area(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. Unit moves to and deploys along the LD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves quickly to LD and reports "SET" to the unit leader.</li> <li>b. Deploys in the organization specified by the unit leader OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Deploys using specified formation techniques.</li> <li>d. Unit leader reports "set" to the commander when element leaders report they are set.</li> <li>e. Conducts coordination with supporting maneuver and/or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</li> <li>f. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on flanks unless directed otherwise.</li> </ul> <p>10. Unit executes the LD and conducts tactical movement in the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports to the unit leader.</li> <li>b. Deploys in the area according to OPORD/FRAGO and/or considering the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul>		

- c. Incorporates information from reconnaissance and surveillance assets into the operation.
- d. Uses effective control measures to enhance situational awareness of the unit.
- e. Clears or conducts surveillance of assigned checkpoints and named areas of interests (NAIs) within the area of responsibility and reports to the unit leader.
- f. Unit leader reports to the commander execution of all control measures within the assigned area of responsibility.
- g. If required, executes control measures as directed by the unit leader/ commander.
- h. Unit leader, as applicable, attempts to keep teams on line to prevent gaps in the unit's sector.
- i. Coordinates movement with supporting maneuver or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.
- j. Unit, if given a series of area reconnaissance objectives, conducts tactical movement to bypass enemy security forces in sector according to bypass criteria.
- k. Employs dismounted elements to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:  
**NOTE:** Leaders of mounted units should plan on dismounting Soldiers for detailed reconnaissance.
  - (1) Detailed reconnaissance is required (such as to observe an NAI, clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines).
  - (2) Gathering human intelligence (HUMINT) from local populace using indigenous language if possible.
  - (3) Stealth is required.
  - (4) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.
  - (5) Vehicle movement through an area is restricted by terrain.
  - (6) Time is available.
  - (7) Security is the primary concern.
- l. Conducts listening halts at danger areas (woods, built-up areas, defiles, severely restricted terrain) based on METT-TC.



11. Unit identifies and reports all enemy forces within the area according to the focus for reconnaissance.

a. Identifies enemy elements.

b. Conducts actions on contact.

(1) Deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill.

(2) Develops the situation while maintaining sufficient combat power to continue the mission.

(3) Chooses a course of action (COA) that allows freedom of maneuver and focuses on the reconnaissance objective.

(4) Execute selected COA.

**NOTE:** The following step may be done in conjunction with step 11.b (3).

(5) Recommends a COA to higher commander.

c. Collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces, factions, and other entities within the area (as applicable), including the following:

(1) Size.

(2) Activities.

(3) Location.

(4) Unit identification.

(5) Time and date.

(6) Equipment.

12. Unit collects and reports terrain information according to the focus for reconnaissance and assigned priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and SIRs.

\*13. Unit leader adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations to—

a. Act or react to chance contact.

b. Answer the CCIRs and/or SIRs.

c. Acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs).

d. When directed by the higher commander.

\*14. Unit leader maintains control.

a. Leader moves to best observe and influence operations and maintain communications with subordinate units.

b. Leader ensures appropriate CCIRs are answered.

c. Leader ensures designated units receive orders and pertinent information.

<p>15. Unit conducts reconnaissance handover with other units/elements according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Unit maintains communications with higher HQ.</p> <p>b. Unit reviews and consolidates area overlay for correctness and completeness.</p> <p>c. Unit tracks, consolidates, and forwards sustainment reports to higher HQ according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>d. Unit tracks and disseminates positions and status of supporting units if applicable.</p> <p>16. Unit reports reconnaissance information according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Confirms or denies higher HQ information requirements (CCIRs and SIRs).</p> <p>b. Provides additional information that may impact operations to include:</p> <p>(1) Source information to include power and/ or influence.</p> <p>(2) Approach routes to urban areas for mounted and dismounted forces.</p> <p>(3) Entry points or points of penetration into urban areas.</p> <p>(4) Danger (hazard) areas.</p> <p>(5) Needs of society.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>17. Unit consolidates and reorganizes, as needed.</p> <p>18. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		
--	--	--

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1270	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)

052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
171-121-4034	Coordinate With Adjacent Units
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-123-1300	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
171-123-1301	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone/Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0055	Conduct Actions on Contact at Company-Troop Level

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4010	Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)  
(17-2-4025)

(FM 3-20.971) (FM 3-20.96)

**CONDITIONS:** During tactical operations, conducts reconnaissance handover (RHO) tasks with another unit. The unit either accepts reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) responsibilities from a forward unit, or is relieved of these responsibilities by a rearward unit. The unit has connectivity with adjacent units and higher headquarters (HQ). Coalition partners, civilians, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional assets may be available to the unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts RHO, providing the link between units to ensure that continuous observation is maintained of all the assigned sector/zone, named areas of interest (NAIs), target areas of interest (TAIs), targets, and/or enemy forces in contact. The unit provides information that answers the higher commander's information requirements and enables units to maneuver to a position of advantage prior to contact. Unit leaders ensure critical information is transmitted between elements using the communications system that allows timely decisions by higher HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs) and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>2. Unit leaders plan using troop-leading procedures (TLP) that include—</p> <p>a. Coordinate redundant surveillance using imagery, signal intelligence (SIGINT), ground surveillance radar (GSR), and UASs to assist in maintaining enemy contact during reconnaissance handover.</p> <p>b. Coordinate locations and criteria for RHO with higher HQ, as applicable.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Coordinate criteria for target handover, as needed.</p> <p>d. Coordinates indirect fires as needed with the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assigns priorities, plans final protective fires, and requests preplanned targets.</li> <li>(2) Coordinates fire control measures and criteria for activation and/or shifting with higher HQ. These include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Restricted fire line.</li> <li>(b) No fire areas.</li> <li>(c) Restricted fire areas.</li> <li>(d) Coordinated fire lines.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Coordinates artillery and/or mortar firing positions with forward/follow-on/security force.</li> <li>(4) Coordinates artillery handover with forward/follow-on/security force.</li> </ul> <p>e. Leader coordinates control measures to support handover, passage of lines, and/or bypasses between units.</p> <p>f. Selects contact point(s) or linkup points.</p> <p>g. Coordinates far- and near-range recognition signals with forward/follow-on/security force as needed.</p> <p>h. Coordinates transfer and/or acceptance of mission command of elements between units and another headquarters as needed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Accepts mission command of elements behind the RHO line from a forward force.</li> <li>(2) Transfers mission command of elements behind the RHO line to a follow-on force.</li> <li>(3) Transfers mission command of elements in front of the RHO line to a security force.</li> </ul> <p>i. Exchanges battlefield combat identification system (BCIS) information if applicable.</p> <p>j. Exchanges frequencies, communications security (COMSEC) key, and/or signal operating instructions (SOI) with forward/follow-on/security force as needed.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>3. Unit prepares for RHO as requirements between units are identified. Leaders take the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Leader establishes communications to link its higher HQ to the forward force as needed.</p> <p>b. Displays correct recognition signal according to the SOI or SOP as needed.</p> <p>(1) NAIs.</p> <p>(2) TAIs and/or preplanned targets.</p> <p>(3) High-payoff targets (HPT) and/or enemy forces.</p> <p>c. Maneuvers elements and/or coordinates positioning of external assets to accept reconnaissance and/or target handover from an advantageous position.</p> <p>d. Establishes surveillance of designated areas and/or acquires enemy forces based on the specific information requirements (SIR), commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), and attack guidance.</p> <p>e. Accepts artillery handover by submitting calls for fire by the forward force as needed.</p> <p>f. Accepts target handover from the forward force through acquisition of designated targets according to the fire support plan and/or attack guidance.</p> <p>g. Completes RHO after unit elements acknowledge they have initiated surveillance of designated areas and/or gained contact with identified enemy forces.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>4. Unit accepts RHO from a forward force according to the order and/or SOP.</p> <p>a. Displays correct recognition signal according to the SOI or SOP as needed.</p> <p>b. Leader establishes communications to link its higher HQ to the forward force as needed.</p> <p>c. Maneuvers elements and/or coordinates positioning of external assets to accept reconnaissance and/or target handover from an advantageous position.</p> <p>(1) NAIs.</p> <p>(2) TAIs and/or preplanned targets.</p> <p>(3) High-payoff targets (HPT) and/or enemy forces.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Establishes surveillance of designated areas and/or acquires enemy forces based on the specific information requirements (SIR), commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), and attack guidance.</p> <p>e. Accepts artillery handover by submitting calls for fire by the forward force as needed.</p> <p>f. Accepts target handover from the forward force through acquisition of designated targets according to the fire support plan and/or attack guidance.</p> <p>g. Completes RHO after unit elements acknowledge they have initiated surveillance of designated areas and/or gained contact with identified enemy forces.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts RHO with a follow-on force according to order and/or SOP.</p> <p>a. Displays correct recognition signal according to the SOI or SOP as needed.</p> <p>b. Occupies covered and concealed positions and/or establishes observation posts (OP) as necessary to maintain surveillance of areas and/or enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Establishes restrictive fire control measures around positions and/or OPs as required.</p> <p>(2) Maintains weapons orientation toward the enemy, engaging in self-defense as needed.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>c. Bypasses enemy, avoiding decisive engagement, to continue reconnaissance while maintaining contact with enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Maintains weapons orientation toward the enemy, engaging in self-defense as necessary.</p> <p>(2) Uses appropriate movement techniques and covered and concealed routes based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil (METT-TC) considerations.</p> <p>(3) Employs indirect fires to suppress enemy in contact and screen friendly movement as required.</p> <p>(4) Maintains contact with unit assets until RHO.</p> <p>d. Relays follow-on force calls for fire until the force's designated fire support element accepts artillery handover.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Conducts target handover when the follow-on force acknowledges it has acquired the designated target.</p> <p>f. Completes RHO after follow-on force acknowledges it has initiated surveillance of designated areas and/or gained contact with identified enemy forces.</p> <p>6. Unit conducts RHO with a security (stationary) force to its rear according to order and/or SOP.</p> <p>a. Confirms security force has occupied positions to provide overwatch and assist the unit's rearward passage of lines.</p> <p>b. Employs indirect fires to suppress enemy in contact and screen friendly movement.</p> <p>c. Disengages by element while maintaining contact using unit and other SR assets.</p> <p>(1) Maintains weapons orientation toward the enemy, engaging in self defense as needed.</p> <p>(2) Uses appropriate movement techniques and covered and concealed routes based on METT-TC to the passage points.</p> <p>d. After artillery handover, submits calls for fire to the designated security force fire support element (FSE) as needed.</p> <p>e. Conducts target handover when the security force acknowledges it has acquired the designated target.</p> <p>f. Completes RHO when the security force acknowledges it is observing designated locations and/or has gained contact with designated enemy forces.</p> <p>*7. Unit leader report completion of RHO to their higher HQ upon completion.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>8. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>9. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

## SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order



071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order (OPORD) at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
071-420-0005	Maneuver a Dismounted Platoon
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-620-0094	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Activities at Company/Troop

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9007	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
07-3-9022	Conduct a Security Patrol
17-1-4025	Conduct a Reconnaissance Handover

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

**TASK:** Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company) (17-2-9225)

(FM 3-20.971)

(FM 3-20.96)

(FM 3-20.98)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a stationary or moving screen mission for a larger force. The order designates the general trace of the screen, the duration of the screen, and the time it must be established. Indirect fire is available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the screen according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit does not allow any enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The unit maintains continuous surveillance of enemy reconnaissance and main body avenues of approach, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AOs), provides early warning of enemy approach to the screened force, and destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements within its capabilities until displacement criteria are met as specified in the operations order. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UAS), and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO and issue a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. The mission or nature of the screen.</li><li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Units or elements participating in the screen.</li> <li>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li> <li>e. The timeline for the screen.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The leader conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) to develop the order.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders coordinate with the protected force leader. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinate any reinforcements necessary to accomplish the screen mission in depth.</li> <li>b. Coordinate the general trace of the screen and effective time, if appropriate.</li> <li>c. Reaffirm area of responsibility (AOR).</li> <li>d. Determine the interval to be maintained between the unit and the protected force.</li> <li>e. Determine battle/target handover criteria and graphic control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinate special requirements or constraints, such as observing named areas of interest (NAIs) or target areas of interest (TAIs).</li> </ul> <p>*5. Unit leaders plan the screen mission. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinate with higher HQ and adjacent units to obtain required intelligence products, and initiating a terrain analysis using maps and other terrain products.</li> <li>b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify screen trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and NAIs.</li> <li>(2) Identify enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements.</li> <li>(3) Identify and mark tentative control measures and dismount and remount points.</li> <li>(4) Select routes or sectors to facilitate rearward displacement.</li> <li>(5) Disseminate data to subordinate units via digital and/or conventional means.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Integrate the fundamentals of security. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Orient on the force, area, or facility to be protected.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Perform continuous reconnaissance.</p> <p>(3) Provide early and accurate warning.</p> <p>(4) Provide reaction time and maneuver space.</p> <p>(5) Maintain enemy contact.</p> <p>d. Conduct mission analysis. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identify the limits of the AO and area of interest (AOI).</p> <p>(2) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles.</p> <p>(3) Evaluate the enemy by considering the following information:</p> <p>(4) Determine tempo of the operation.</p> <p>(5) Identify the focus of the operation.</p> <p>(6) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOA).</p> <p>e. Develop the surveillance and reconnaissance plan. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Develop a plan that answers the commander's information requirements (CCIRs)/priority intelligence requirements (IRs/PIRs) and accomplish his intent.</p> <p>(2) Integrate air reconnaissance assets and UASs, if available, forward of the screen line.</p> <p>f. Organize the unit to best accomplish the mission. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Assign units to observe, identify, and report enemy actions.</p> <p>(2) Coordinate for additional combat and sustainment augmentation, as required.</p> <p>(3) Employ attached sustainment/protection elements, such as engineers, to provide support to maneuver elements.</p> <p>(4) Designate security forces to cover likely enemy approaches.</p> <p>g. Plan for air and ground integration.</p> <p>h. Plan for positioning of leadership elements.</p> <p>i. Designate which unit has responsibility for the area between the screening force rear boundary and the screened force AO.</p> <p>j. Designate graphic control measures, including:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Initial screen line that is forward of the general trace but within range of supporting indirect fire.</p> <p>(2) Subsequent screen lines as phase lines.</p> <p>(3) Passage of lines graphics and infiltration lanes.</p> <p>(4) Left and right limits of the screen as well as a phase line for the rear boundary.</p> <p>(5) Sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements.</p> <p>(6) Rally points, linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints.</p> <p>(7) General locations for observation posts (OP) enabling observation of the avenues of approach into the sector.</p> <p>k. Designate NAIs and assign observation.</p> <p>l. Annotate unit graphic control measures using higher HQ FRAGO overlay as a guide, and disseminating graphics to subordinate units.</p> <p>m. Establish engagement criteria according to—</p> <p>(1) Size of enemy force.</p> <p>(2) Type of enemy unit.</p> <p>(3) Activity of enemy unit.</p> <p>n. Integrate a fire support plan.</p> <p>o. Integrate the engineer obstacle plan.</p> <p>p. Plan sustainment and take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Integrate the movement and positioning of sustainment assets into the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(2) Integrate refueling, rearming, and resupply operations into the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(3) Ensure adequate support to reconnaissance elements.</p> <p>(4) Plan supply routes to each element's location.</p> <p>(5) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations.</p> <p>(6) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation assets.</p> <p>(7) Establish drop points for movement of key sustainment assets.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(8) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRP), unit maintenance collection points (UMCP), and ambulance exchange points (AXPs).</p> <p>q. Develop contingency plan for chance contact with the enemy prior to reaching initial screen line.</p> <p>r. Plan movement of units performing front, rear, and/or flank screen.</p> <p>s. Plan limited visibility surveillance requirements.</p> <p>t. Plan successive bounds, alternate bounds by units, or continuous marching method of movement.</p> <p>u. Coordinate for passage of lines, if necessary.</p> <p>v. Ensure the plan is understood by all subordinate leaders.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the unit.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders give the order to execute screen.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>8. The unit moves to screen line by conducting one of the three primary methods:</p> <p>a. Zone reconnaissance to answer the intelligence requirement.</p> <p>b. Infiltration to avoid enemy forces and establishing the screen.</p> <p>c. A tactical road march to the screen line.</p> <p>9. The unit occupies the screen. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes the stationary screen:</p> <p>(1) Determines changes to task organization and unit AOs after zone reconnaissance based on tasks and the factors of the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>(2) Determines primary screen orientation for the unit and primary OPs.</p> <p>(3) Identifies engagement criteria.</p> <p>(4) Identifies method of displacement to subsequent screen lines while maintaining contact with the enemy.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Identifies initial locations for attached maneuver forces that provides flexible response against enemy reconnaissance throughout the unit AO if applicable.</p> <p>(6) Identifies positions that allow use of Long-Range Advanced Scout Surveillance System (LRAS3) to assist in observation and provides overwatch, if needed.</p> <p>(7) Determines requirements for short- and long-duration surveillance of NAIs.</p> <p>(8) Determines patrol requirements between or in support of OPs.</p> <p>b. Conducts reconnaissance that uses cueing, mixing, and redundancy to integrate unit and other assets into the security effort to gain and maintain contact throughout the depth of the AO. This should include taking the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Positions OPs in depth and focused on NAIs.</p> <p>(2) Employs UASs and aviation assets to reconnoiter routes, infiltration lanes, or key and restricted terrain forward or to the flanks of the unit AO.</p> <p>(3) Orients other surveillance and reconnaissance assets on NAIs located on avenues of approach, routes forward, or the flanks of the unit screen line.</p> <p>(4) Emplaces ground sensors on flank avenues of approach or routes leading into the unit AO.</p> <p>(5) Employs chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) reconnaissance teams to reconnoiter templated attacks and bypasses. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(a) Synchronizes target acquisition tasks with security and reconnaissance tasks.</p> <p>(b) Synchronizes fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements or high-value targets (HVTs).</p> <p>(c) Establishes locations and criteria for RHO and target handover.</p> <p>(d) Specifies graphic control measures that support the concept of the operation.</p> <p>(e) Establishes moving screen. Takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Uses control measures to facilitate orientation of direction of movement and orientation of screen.</p> <p>(2) Repositions to stay oriented on the force it is screening. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Maintains continuous surveillance of unit AO. Takes the following actions:</li> <li>(b) Uses continuous marching when speed is required and contact is not likely.</li> <li>(c) Uses bounding by section or OPs, alternately or successively, when security is desired and contact is likely.</li> </ul> <p>(3) Conducts coordination with supporting air elements, as applicable.</p> <p>10. Acquires threat reconnaissance elements and destroys, if required, according to order. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable, to gain contact with enemy reconnaissance forward of the initial screen line and/or in restrictive terrain.</li> <li>b. Directs OPs and patrols to initially focus on reconnaissance avenues of approach as required.</li> <li>c. Uses indirect fires to impede and/or harass the threat according to fire support plan.</li> <li>d. Conducts counter reconnaissance to destroy, defeat, or repel all threat reconnaissance elements within capabilities and according to engagement criteria.</li> </ul> <p>11. The unit gains contact with threat main body. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable, to gain and assist in maintaining contact with threat main body.</li> <li>b. Reorients OPs and patrols to focus on most likely avenues of approach and/or NAIs.</li> <li>c. Accepts reconnaissance handover/battle handover/target handover from reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable.</li> <li>d. Acquires targets and executes indirect fires according to the fire support plan.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Continues operations as directed.</p> <p>12. The unit displaces to the subsequent screen line. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Requests permission to displace.</p> <p>b. Directs OPs facing most immediate threat to displace first.</p> <p>c. Continues to adjust indirect fires.</p> <p>d. Maintains contact with advancing threat elements.</p> <p>e. Conducts reconnaissance handover/battle handover/target handover with other elements according to order and/or unit SOPs.</p> <p>f. Reports to higher HQ, as applicable, when set on the subsequent line.</p> <p>g. Keeps higher HQ informed throughout the operation.</p> <p>13. The unit completes the screen.</p> <p><b>ASSESS</b></p> <p>14. Unit leader maintains situational understanding and control conduct of the screen.</p> <p>a. Direct elements to move, on order, to successive screen lines.</p> <p>b. Use FRAGOs and graphic control measures to direct the moves.</p> <p>c. Direct elements to report when they occupy new screen lines or OPs.</p> <p>15. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>16. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
061-284-3040	Engage Targets with Close Air Support
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone-Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-123-4001	Prepare a Platoon Fire Plan
171-620-0061	Conduct a Screen at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0016	Conduct Route Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0019	Plan Fire Support at Company-Troop Level
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)

171-121-4046	Direct Emplacement and Activation of Early Warning Systems
171-121-4004	Conduct a Screening Mission

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
17-2-4017	Conduct Target Acquisition (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon0Company)
17-6-9225	Conduct a Screen (Battalion-Brigade)
17-3-2605	Conduct a Defense
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9504	React to Indirect Fire
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company) (17-2-0320)

(FM 3-20.96)

(FM 3-20.971)

**CONDITIONS:** During tactical operations, the unit receives an order directing it to conduct reconnaissance. The higher commander's guidance specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. The commander determines that avoiding enemy/threat detection is essential to accomplishing the mission and has ordered an infiltration. Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional Sustainment assets may be available to the unit. Contact is expected. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit moves through the area, avoiding detection, and reaches the designated locations without the enemy determining its size, composition, and intent. The unit completes linkup with sufficient manpower, equipment, and supplies to accomplish its assigned tasks at the time and location specified in the order. The commander ensures that dismounted elements and/or supporting units receive all information that is disseminated to other units. No friendly units suffer casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. The commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) to plan the infiltration/exfiltration. Utilizes the company intelligence support team (CoIST) and takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtains all current information and intelligence concerning the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>b. Coordinates for surveillance and reconnaissance assets that may include tactical unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and signal intelligence (SIGINT) to locate weaknesses in enemy dispositions.</li> <li>c. Assesses infiltration/exfiltration lanes/routes using maps, urban operations sketch, aerial photography, and any additional intelligence.</li> </ul> <p>(1) Ensures lanes/routes avoid obstacles, populated areas, and areas occupied or covered by threat elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Ensures lanes/routes provide cover and concealment by placing ridge lines, rivers, and other restrictive terrain between friendly and threat forces.</p> <p>(3) Ensures lanes/routes provide sufficient maneuver space to allow units/elements to avoid enemy contact.</p> <p>d. Employs initial reconnaissance patrols to find or confirm gaps and routes through enemy positions.</p> <p>e. Coordinates for UAS to reconnoiter primary and alternate infiltration lanes, rally points, and/or pick-up zones (PZ).</p> <p>f. Determines most appropriate method for infiltration/exfiltration based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>(1) Identifies whether unit moves mounted, dismounted, or a combination of the two.</p> <p>(2) Identifies whether unit will move as a single element or in echelon based on the following:</p> <p>(a) Mission focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</p> <p>(b) Mission time constraints.</p> <p>(c) Night vision and target acquisition capabilities of both friendly and enemy forces.</p> <p>(d) Communications capability.</p> <p>(e) Navigation capabilities and limitations.</p> <p>g. Coordinates layered (redundant) surveillance using imagery, SIGINT, contrast sensitivity function (CSF), and REMBASS to detect enemy/threat and provide early warning.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with maneuver forces tasked to assist or support the infiltration.</p> <p>i. Coordinates deceptive measures to assist infiltration/exfiltration.</p> <p>j. Coordinates forward and rearward passage of lines as necessary.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*2. The unit leader issues orders addressing the following:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Threat situation to include likely enemy positions, obstacles, weapon systems, night observation devices electronic warfare, and their capabilities.</p> <p>b. Civilian situation to include populated areas and heavily traveled routes and trails.</p> <p>c. Terrain to include effect on threat weapon systems.</p> <p>d. Weather to include effect on observation equipment.</p> <p>e. Location, disposition, and missions of friendly forces that may impact mission.</p> <p>f. Task organization based on deploying the largest elements that can move undetected while maintaining unit integrity at some echelon.</p> <p>g. Concept of the operation that describes as a minimum:</p> <p>(1) Scheme for infiltration/exfiltration to include—</p> <p>(a) Mounted, dismounted, or aerial movement that takes advantage of weaknesses in enemy dispositions, limited visibility, weather, and terrain.</p> <p>(b) Use of single or multiple infiltration lanes/routes.</p> <p>(c) Single or echeloned movement to include time and distance between elements moving on the lanes/routes.</p> <p>(d) Task, purpose, and integration of assisting or supporting maneuver forces to include security force.</p> <p>(e) Location and purpose of deceptions to support movement.</p> <p>(2) Graphic control measures that support concept of operation to include contact points, point(s) of departure (PD), infiltration lane(s), primary and alternate rally points, linkup points, and PZs.</p> <p>(3) Priorities of fire and use of indirect fires to support the movement.</p> <p>(4) Integration of additional assets to support infiltration.</p> <p>(a) UAS reconnoiters key/restrictive terrain, lanes, rally points, and/or linkup locations.</p> <p>(b) Positions for ground surveillance radar (GSR) along lateral routes to the front or flanks.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Positions/areas for sensors that do not interfere with unit movement.</p> <p>(d) Priorities, effect, purpose, and timing for electronic and other non-lethal attacks.</p> <p>(5) Human intelligence (HUMINT) collection requirements.</p> <p>(6) Engagement criteria and actions on contact.</p> <p>(7) Criteria for aborting the infiltration and/or exfiltration.</p> <p>(8) Criteria for postponing or canceling infiltration and/or exfiltration.</p> <p>h. Priorities for support and description of sustainment operations to support infiltration/exfiltration.</p> <p>(1) Medical evacuation.</p> <p>(2) Administration of killed in action.</p> <p>(3) Vehicle recovery (if necessary).</p> <p>(4) Emergency resupply procedures and locations.</p> <p>(5) Criteria for destroying equipment and supplies.</p> <p>i. Movement of unit leader.</p> <p>j. Command post (CP) movement to maintain communications with higher headquarters.</p> <p>k. Designated communications methods and procedures that include specifying responsibilities and procedures for integrating supporting analog units into the digital network.</p> <p>(1) Updating locations and status of elements.</p> <p>(2) Providing locations of key elements to units.</p> <p>(3) Providing key information that was transmitted to units.</p> <p>3. Prior to departure, the unit informs all units in area and on flanks of organization, time(s) and location(s) for infiltration, zone/area(s), and time of return (if applicable).</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>4. Unit conducts infiltration.</p> <p>a. Separates into infiltrating elements at designated point.</p> <p>b. Initiates fires for suppression and deception.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Moves along concealed primary or alternate routes that avoid—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Silhouetting moving units/personnel.</li> <li>(2) Obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Enemy/threat positions.</li> <li>(4) Populated areas.</li> <li>(5) Main avenues of approach.</li> <li>(6) Heavily traveled routes and trails.</li> </ol> <p>d. Maintains dispersion and noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</p> <p>e. By element, avoids detection by halting and hiding.</p> <p>f. Lead elements confirm that routes and critical points are clear and transmit information to follow-on units.</p> <p>g. If contact is made, avoids decisive engagement:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unit/element breaks contact, and seeks alternate route(s) as necessary to reach designated locations.</li> <li>(2) Unit/element aborts infiltration according to order.</li> </ol> <p>h. Conducts linkup at designated location(s).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Lead element reconnoiters and secures designated location.</li> <li>(2) Following elements conduct long-range recognition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishes communications before entering direct fire weapons range.</li> <li>(b) Responds to challenges and authenticates correctly according to signal operating instructions (SOI).</li> <li>(c) Confirms short-range recognition symbols if necessary.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(3) Following elements complete the linkup. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Exchanges short-range recognition symbols according to order or SOP.</li> <li>(b) Completes movement and occupies positions according to order or SOP.</li> </ol> </li> <li>i. Prepares for follow-on mission.</li> </ol> <p>5. Unit exfiltrates (if required).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Performance measures for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration previously discussed with the following additional considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Separates into exfiltrating elements at designated rally points as required.</li> <li>b. Conducts tactical movement to pickup or reentry rally points.</li> <li>c. Conducts linkup with extraction unit at pickup point if necessary.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Establishes communications before entering direct fire weapons range.</li> <li>(2) Responds to challenges and authenticates correctly according to SOI.</li> <li>(3) Exchanges short-range recognition symbols according to order or SOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Conducts movement to designated area following rearward passage of lines.</li> </ul> <p>*6. Unit headquarters maintains control.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Commander moves to best monitor and control infiltration.</li> <li>b. Commander ensures supporting units receive related information and reports that were transmitted.</li> <li>c. CP moves to maintain communications between subordinate elements and higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. CP tracks and disseminates positions and status of supporting units.</li> <li>e. Unit reports information according to order and SOP.</li> </ul> <p><b>ASSESS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Unit reports completion of linkup to higher HQ.</li> <li>8. Unit reorganizes and cross-levels as required to prepare for follow-on mission.</li> <li>9. Unit continues mission as directed.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-0541	Perform Exterior Movement Techniques
071-620-0011	Conduct Zone/Area Reconnaissance at Company/Troop Level



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-337-1018	Direct Reaction to an Ambush
400-805-5099	Implement Measures to Prevent Fratricide
113-305-1001	Communicate With a Tactical Radio
171-121-4067	Execute Platoon Precombat Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-1-1199	Conduct Tactical Movement
07-2-1234	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
17-6-9314	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Battalion-Brigade)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact

**SUPPORTING DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs
05-3-D0019	Conduct 5 and 25 Meter Checks

**STANDARDS TASK:** Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)  
(07-2-1324)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct area security operations at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts area security according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes a force presence throughout the area of operations (AO). The unit prevents threat ground reconnaissance elements from directly observing friendly activities within the area being secured; and it prevents threat ground maneuver forces from penetrating the defensive perimeters established by the unit leader.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. The mission or nature of the area security.</li><li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Units or elements participating in the area security.</p> <p>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</p> <p>e. The timeline for the area security.</p> <p>*3. The unit leader plans for the mission using troop-leading procedures (TLPs). He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the AO.</p> <p>(1) Identifies and marks boundaries for AO.</p> <p>(2) Identifies locations for possible observation posts and checkpoints.</p> <p>b. Determines liaison requirements.</p> <p>c. Coordinates for liaison officers, local guides, interpreters as required.</p> <p>d. Determines reporting requirements to higher HQ.</p> <p>e. Develops casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) procedures.</p> <p>f. Identifies security measures.</p> <p>g. Identifies areas where U.S. forces should not go (for example, religious shrines, areas where the peace mandate or other agreement restrict U.S. access).</p> <p>h. Identifies protection requirements.</p> <p>i. Determines resupply requirements.</p> <p>j. Plans for employment of augmentations to unit such as civil military detachments, military police teams, and sniper teams, as required.</p> <p>k. Develops task organization required to accomplish the mission.</p> <p>l. Addresses actions on chance contact with enemy.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader establishes a reserve force. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Designates the reserve force element.</p> <p>b. Selects primary and alternate positions for the reserve force.</p> <p>c. Selects routes to projected places of employment.</p> <p>d. Designates control measures.</p> <p>e. Defines linkup procedures.</p> <p>f. Identifies conditions for employment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>PREPARE</b></p> <p>*5. The unit leader provides intelligence requirements to security force.</p> <p>*6. The unit leader identifies the security task required to be performed. He takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies the need for reconnaissance and/or combat patrols.</li> <li>b. Determines the need for checkpoints.</li> <li>c. Identifies the requirement for convoy escorts.</li> <li>d. Determines the need for observation posts (OPs).</li> </ol> <p>*7. The unit leader disseminates reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to subordinates to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*8. The unit leader issues clear and concise tasking, orders and instructions to include ROE. He issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>9. The unit conducts a rehearsal (includes rehearsal of reserve force).</p> <p><b>EXECUTE</b></p> <p>10. The unit establishes and occupies an outpost as required.</p> <p>11. The unit conducts area security mission. It takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executes patrols as required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts reconnaissance patrols when necessary. Takes the following actions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Executes a route reconnaissance.</li> <li>(b) Executes an area reconnaissance.</li> <li>(c) Executes a zone reconnaissance.</li> <li>(d) Executes a point reconnaissance.</li> <li>(e) Executes a leader's reconnaissance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Conducts combat patrols when needed.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Executes a raid patrol.</li> <li>(b) Executes an ambush patrol.</li> <li>(c) Executes a security patrol.</li> <li>(3) Establishes patrol routes and schedules as required.</li> <li>(4) Assigns mission to elements and supervises their activities.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Maintains communications with higher HQ and subordinate units.</p> <p>(6) Maintains capability to reinforce or support patrols with fires according to order, guidance, and or SOPs.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The unit's habitual use of elements to patrol selected areas should help the unit develop familiarity with the community and the area and build trust and confidence with the citizens. If cordon and search operations or vehicle inspections are required, units familiar with the area and the populace should conduct the mission.</p> <p>(7) Debriefs patrols as required.</p> <p>b. Establishes hasty or deliberate checkpoints. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Positions checkpoint in an area clear of hazards.</p> <p>(2) Positions checkpoint where it is visible.</p> <p>(3) Positions vehicles to deter resistance to Soldiers manning checkpoint.</p> <p>(4) Emplaces obstacles to slow traffic into search area.</p> <p>(5) Establishes a reserve.</p> <p>(6) Establishes a bypass lane.</p> <p>(7) Establishes communications within checkpoint area.</p> <p>(8) Designates search area.</p> <p>(9) Constructs and equips checkpoint.</p> <p>c. Secures routes.</p> <p>d. Conducts OP operations. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identifies activities or locations to be observed.</p> <p>(2) Conducts reconnaissance to select OP sites across unit AO.</p> <p>(3) Assigns OP missions.</p> <p>(4) Repositions OPs as required.</p> <p>(5) Maintains capability to reinforce or support OP(s) by fires according to order, guidance, and/or SOPs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Executes convoy escorts for military or civilian movements as required.</p> <p>f. React to civil disturbances.</p> <p>g. Searches buildings. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies object of search (for example, weapons, contraband, and so forth).</li> <li>(2) Ensures coordination has been conducted for required augmentation such as explosive ordinance disposal (EOD) or military working dogs (MWDs).</li> <li>(3) Reports inspection results according to ROE, higher HQ orders, or SOPs.</li> </ol> <p>h. Secures selected sites (for example, voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches) according to ROE, and higher HQ orders. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts reconnaissance to identify sites.</li> <li>(2) Assigns subordinate element missions.</li> </ol> <p>i. Enforces curfews. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Publicizes the curfew periods.</li> <li>(2) Monitors curfew compliance.</li> </ol> <p>j. Stabilizes areas with escalating tension. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies potential "hot spots" of increased tension.</li> <li>(2) Determines which factions may be involved and their probable objectives.</li> <li>(3) Coordinates with factions to resolve real or perceived problems.</li> <li>(4) Dispatches coordination or liaison teams as required.</li> <li>(5) Reports developments of any de-stabilizing incidents and other changes to situation to higher HQ as required.</li> </ol> <p>k. Demonstrates resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs and people living in the AO by attending local events.</p> <p>l. Coordinates for disposition of detained personnel, documents, equipment, and weapons.</p> <p>m. Commits the reserve force as required.</p> <p>n. Establishes an upgraded alert status for elements in affected and adjacent areas, as needed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
o. Submits reports according to higher HQ order and SOPs. <b>ASSESS</b> 12. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. 13. The unit continues operations as directed. * indicates a leader task step.		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
171-300-0008	Secure a Critical Area at Platoon Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1387	Employ a Reserve Force (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1405	Establish an Outpost (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-2054	Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5045	Conduct Negotiations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9051	Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct an Action on Contact
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)
07-3-9023	Conduct a Presence Patrol
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint

19-3-4004	Conduct Civil Disturbance Control
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-4-D9509	Enter and Clear a Room
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5Cs
05-3-D0017	React to an IED Attack While Mounted
05-3-D0015	React to an IED Attack While Dismounted



**TASK:** Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations (Platoon-Company) (19-3-2406)

(FM 3-39)

(FM 3-19.4)

(ADP 5-0)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to establish a roadblock and/or checkpoint in its area of operations (AO). The local police or security forces may assist with the operations. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and escalation of force (EOF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The element conducts roadblock and checkpoint operations. The element plans and constructs a roadblock and/or checkpoint according to the commander's guidance. The roadblock and/or checkpoint controls vehicular and pedestrian traffic by preventing passage or limiting entry to and exit from the specified area. The element complies with the ROE, ROI, and EOF, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The element leader prepares to conduct roadblock and/or checkpoint operations by initiating troop-leading procedures. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes time for understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses the backward-planning sequence to schedule troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>(4) Verifies the commander's critical information requirements.</li> <li>(5) Requests or conducts an intelligence preparation of the battlefield and a threat analysis.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Units should consider roadblocks and checkpoints as an information/intelligence source. In addition, the police intelligence operations (PIO) function represents military police (MP) capability to collect and process relevant information from many sources generally associated with policing activities or military police operations. As an integrating function, PIO describes an approach to all other MP functions that ensures their integration with all relevant police activities and organizations in the operations process and the AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Issues a warning order to all squads.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and hostile situations.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes the mission using mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>(2) Compares courses of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher HQ for the eight-digit grid coordinates of the area to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with adjacent and/or supported units in the element's AO.</li> <li>f. Implements plans that instruct the element to operate the roadblock and/or checkpoint for 24 hours continuously, if needed (based on the mission).</li> <li>g. Implements a standing operating procedure (SOPs) for moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint, as needed according to the security and operations plan.</li> <li>h. Disseminates and enforces the ROE, EOF guidelines, and ROI.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that personnel are aware of and follow the ROE, EOF, and ROI.</li> <li>(2) Ensures personnel know the rules regarding search, arrest, standoff distances, and the use of force.</li> <li>(3) Directs personnel to attack and disable all vehicles or personnel attempting to breach or flee.</li> <li>(4) Directs personnel to eliminate hostile elements and vehicles that initiate or return fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Directs personnel to eliminate hostile elements and vehicles that persist in attempting a breach.  <b>NOTE:</b> Nonlethal tactics and capabilities are always supported, held in reserve, or overwatched by lethal capabilities.</p> <p>*2. The subordinate element leader prepares for the mission. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures that functionality checks are performed on communications equipment and digital systems, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensures that communications are established using Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2), if available.</li> <li>c. Plans for a mission control cell to communicate with higher HQ and issue orders and/or reports (digitally), if available.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for mission essential logistical and sustainment supplies (such as Class I, II, III, IV, V supplies).</li> <li>e. Directs squad leaders to conduct a map reconnaissance and develop overlays with all known friendly forces and routes plotted by using maps and/or digital means.</li> <li>f. Determines the type of roadblock and/or checkpoint (deliberate or hasty) to establish, based on mission requirements.</li> <li>g. Briefs elements on the ROE, ROI, and EOF.</li> <li>h. Conducts a precombat inspection.</li> <li>i. Ensures that a sleep plan is established at the element level.</li> <li>j. Ensures that a medical evacuation plan is established.</li> <li>k. Ensures that military working dog (MWD) teams are available.</li> <li>l. Ensures that an explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) team is available.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> In the event that the MWD detects explosives or other substances, the MWD team should withdraw immediately from the vehicle. The area should be evacuated and the chain of command notified. Radio operations are stopped until the MWD team and security forces reach a safe distance from the suspected explosives. The MWD team will stay behind a barrier at a safe distance in case the EOD team leader requests further detection assistance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>m. Coordinates for interpreters, host nation police, or host nation authorities.</li> <li>n. Coordinates for logistical support for lighting when needed.</li> <li>o. Coordinates for engineer support for emplacing obstacles, barriers, and structures.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The subordinate element leader supervises the element and ensures that roadblocks and/or checkpoints are set up properly. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies the location and/or route of the roadblock and/or checkpoint with the element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that the location provides good cover and concealment.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that the selected location is adequate for the creation of a roadblock and/or checkpoint.</li> <li>(3) Verifies the location with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Establishes security and defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint is located at a defensible site.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint has crew-served weapons that can provide overwatch and cover the entire site.</li> <li>(3) Directs the establishment of fields of fire that cover the approaches to the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</li> <li>(4) Ensures that the elements construct the roadblock and/or checkpoint according to the leader's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*4. The subordinate element leader directs the element to prepare for roadblock and/or checkpoint operations. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies the exact area to set up the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>b. Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint cannot be seen from a distance.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This keeps drivers from turning off when they see the roadblock and/or checkpoint. If possible roadblock or checkpoint location should not allow for high speed approach.</p> <p>c. Ensures that the element uses existing culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends, or dips in the road to create a roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>d. Reports the exact location of the roadblock and/or checkpoint to the element leader.</p> <p>e. Ensures that fighting positions are prepared for each squad member.</p> <p>f. Establishes vehicle and personnel search procedures according to established authorizations, the SOP, and ROE.</p> <p>g. Assigns personnel to establish male and female search teams.</p> <p>h. Ensures that the assault force is in place to pursue those who attempt to avoid the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>i. Ensures that the element marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs, to include speed limit.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Warning signs should be posted in the native and English languages in the roadblock and/or checkpoint area. If possible warning signs should be placed at various distances leading up to RB/CP (Example: 150, 100, 50 meters, and STOP). Signs should also specify when deadly force is authorized for failure to comply with posted warnings (based on the established SOP, orders, ROE, and EOF).</p> <p>5. The element constructs a roadblock. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Positions the roadblock at or near an intersection or near an area that allows for vehicles to be easily rerouted or turned around.</p> <p>b. Positions the roadblock so that it does not allow unauthorized vehicles or enemy personnel to bypass.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Places barricades along the road, shoulders, and ditches to channel passing traffic.</li> <li>d. Ensures that there is adequate lighting for drivers to see the roadblock.</li> <li>e. Positions squad vehicles in a covered and concealed location near the squad's position.</li> <li>f. Ensures that if barriers are used across the roadway, they have an opening where slow-moving vehicles can enter to allow the search teams time to observe them closely.</li> <li>g. Establishes security force positions.</li> <li>h. Ensures that a translator is present at the roadblock.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element constructs a checkpoint. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes a deliberate or hasty checkpoint.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Establish a deliberate checkpoint when it will be in operation for a long period of time (13 hours or more). A deliberate checkpoint is permanent or semi-permanent and is typically constructed to protect an operating base or well-established main supply route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Establishes a hasty checkpoint when used for a set period of time, usually a short duration (approximately 5 to 30 minutes).</li> <li>c. Establishes security and defensive positions.</li> <li>d. Establishes a checkpoint where it is hidden from distant view (usually for a hasty checkpoint).</li> <li>e. Creates approach lanes that force traffic to slow down, and directs vehicles to the designated areas.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Engineer tape, debris, trees, and rocks can be used for hasty checkpoints. Deliberate checkpoints should be constructed of more permanent structures that may require engineer support (such as barriers, dragon's teeth, concertina wire, caltrops, cement blocks, and buildings).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Establishes holding areas.</li> <li>g. Establishes an initial search area or zone.</li> <li>h. Establishes detailed search areas for personnel (male and female) and vehicles.</li> <li>i. Establishes security force positions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Ensures that there is adequate lighting for night operations.</p> <p>k. Ensures that a translator is present at the checkpoints.</p> <p>7. The element establishes vehicle checkpoint zones or areas. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes the initial search zone.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The initial search zone is a distant visual search area where vehicles and personnel are ordered (by visual or audio means) to stop at a clearly marked point before they actually enter the checkpoint. Personnel and vehicles can be visually searched from a predetermined distance (approximately 25 to 100 meters or as the mission dictates) while checkpoint operators remain behind a protective barrier or vehicle. Personnel are ordered to exit their vehicle, open their vehicle compartments, uncover or take out items from their vehicle, open or pull up their overgarments, turn around, and perform any other additional measures according to the SOP. This visual search is conducted before bringing personnel and vehicles into the checkpoint for a detailed search. Local support authorities can be used for this area. The initial search zone is more applicable to a deliberate checkpoint but can be used for a hasty checkpoint if the mission allows.</p> <p>b. Establishes a canalization zone.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Natural and/or artificial obstacles are used for a canalization zone to canalize vehicles into the checkpoint with no way to exit without the consent of personnel controlling the checkpoint. This zone encompasses the maximum effective range of the unit's weapons systems.</p> <p>c. Establishes a turning or deceleration zone.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The turning or deceleration zone forces vehicles to decelerate and make slow turns. If individuals attempt to maintain their speed they could crash into a series of obstacles.</p> <p>d. Ensures that fighting positions are prepared for each element member.</p> <p>e. Establishes a detailed search zone.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The detailed search zone is a relatively secure area where personnel and vehicles are positively identified and a complete detailed search is conducted. Blocking obstacles are used to isolate vehicles or individuals from others with overwatch protection from weapon positions. The search zone is further subdivided into three subordinate requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Uses partitions or screened areas for privacy.</li> <li>(2) Provides all-around security, protective barriers, and rapid removal areas for personnel and detainees.</li> <li>(3) Ensures that the reaction force is located to respond to the checkpoint and provide immediate assistance (lethal and nonlethal) if required.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Establishes a safe zone.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The safe zone is an assembly area for the checkpoint that allows personnel to rest, sleep, eat, and recover in relative security. Normally personnel should be rotated in and out of extended checkpoint operations but a safe zone is an essential requirement.</p> <p>8. The element maintains security. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes a rest area for personnel near the search area so they can assemble quickly as a reserve force.</li> <li>b. Searches all vehicles and personnel for certain items (such as weapons, explosives, and contraband) as directed by the subordinate element leader.</li> <li>c. Positions sentries and patrols to prevent a possible ambush.</li> <li>d. Ensures that vehicle traffic, movement, and personnel are handled according to the established directives, SOP, and ROE.</li> <li>e. Stays alert to detect suspicious activity, vehicles, equipment, or personnel.</li> </ul> <p>9. The element reacts to hostile actions. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Fires warning shots (if authorized by the ROE) to deter the breach.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Uses the minimum amount of force necessary to disarm infiltrating military or paramilitary forces.</p> <p>c. Attacks to disable all vehicles attempting to breach or flee.</p> <p>d. Destroys vehicles that initiate or return fires or persist in attempting a breach.</p> <p>10. The element moves the roadblock and/or checkpoint to keep the enemy off balance (when applicable and the mission dictates). It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Follows the SOP for moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>b. Keeps all unnecessary and prepackaged roadblock and/or checkpoint equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>c. Conducts rehearsals for setting up, taking down, and moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>d. Conducts a detailed brief with the oncoming shift, including all incidents that may occur during the shift.</p> <p>e. Improves the roadblock and/or checkpoint and security positions as time and the situation permit.</p> <p>*11. The subordinate element leader maintains contact with the elements to ensure that each roadblock and/or checkpoint is operating properly.</p> <p>*12. The element leader continues to monitor the execution of the operation and forwards information to the element headquarters. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Compiles information into the platoon situation overlay or digital system if available.</p> <p>b. Forwards situation reports and spot reports to the higher HQ.</p> <p>*13. The element leader plans for follow-on and future missions.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

## SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
191-377-4254	Search a Detainee
191-377-4256	Guard Detainees

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
17-2-4017	Conduct Target Acquisition (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-3-2605	Conduct a Defense

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
19-4-D0105	Establish a Hasty Checkpoint
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)  
(07-2-4054)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injury due to combat. Some may be refugees and others may be inhabitants of the area in which the unit operates. Some may be openly hostile. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit secures civilians during operations according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or the higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, and searches, safeguards, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations (AO).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or a fragmentary order FRAGO directing unit to secure civilians. Unit leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to element leaders ensuring that subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning and preparation needs. The WARNO must include:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Tentative unit organization for the securing of civilians.</p> <p>b. Location and tentative timeline of the operation, including movement times and no later than times for execution.</p> <p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; initiate movement; conduct reconnaissance tasks, and the commander's critical information requirement (CCIR).</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the following:</p> <p>a. Interpreters to help interface with the local populace, if necessary.</p> <p>b. Control measures for expected or unexpected situations.</p> <p>c. Organization of the unit to accomplish the mission and/or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders disseminate reports and overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders issue clear and concise tasking, orders, and instructions to include ROE.</p> <p>*6. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders or designated representatives supervise the operation. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Ensure civilians are treated with respect.</p> <p>b. Ensure elements understand the ROE.</p> <p>c. Ensure elements/soldiers understand procedures for dealing with news media.</p> <p>d. Use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*8. Designated elements secure civilians. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain 360-degree and three-dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered.</li> <li>b. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treat them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> <li>c. Report the situation and status in a timely manner to higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Assign personnel to search civilians. (Keep identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.)</li> <li>e. Restrain and detain noncombatants who do not follow instructions, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Safeguard noncombatants and provide humane but firm treatment at all times.</li> <li>(2) Move noncombatants away from the immediate combat area and safeguard against hostile fire.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.</li> <li>g. Assign guards to escort the civilians, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evacuate civilians to a processing and/or reception station or to an intermediate collection point run by higher HQ.</li> <li>(2) Ensure that guards escorting the civilians are prepared to give concise information to the processing/reception station or intermediate collection point about the original location of the civilians and their actions since being encountered (for example, reluctant, totally uncooperative, hostile).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>9. The unit gives proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>ASSESS</b> 10. The unit follows ROE guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain. *11. The unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step.		

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
191-377-4254	Search a Detainee
191-377-4256	Guard Detainees

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-3107	Process Detainee(s) at Point of Capture (POC)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3036)  
(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and integrates fire support for the mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has the battalion (BN) target list; communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit plans and integrates fire support according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Unit leaders and/or the fire support team (FIST) determine the desired effect fires should have on the enemy. Unit leaders and/or the FIST plan, integrate, and coordinate indirect fires to support all phases of the operation. Unit leaders and/or forward observers (FOs) employ indirect fires using the correct "call for fire" format and procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>PLAN</b></p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Receive an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarify priority intelligence requirements (PIRs).</li> <li>d. Confirm changes to the higher HQ and unit task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirm changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. Unit leaders perform a map reconnaissance. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify tentative target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Identify probable or known enemy locations.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Unit leaders and the FIST plan fire support. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determine desired effect on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt).</li> <li>b. Plan priority of fires (should support the main effort).</li> <li>c. Identify priority targets.</li> <li>d. Plan close air support.</li> <li>e. Identify ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate.</li> <li>f. Develop graphical fire control measures to include measures to initiate, lift, or shift fires.</li> <li>g. Confirm whether the use of smoke, scatterable mines, illumination, or dual purpose improved conventional munitions is restricted and who controls them.</li> <li>h. Determine communications procedures to use when calling for fire.</li> <li>i. Determine when and under what circumstances to engage targets.</li> <li>j. Determine the method of engagement and method of control to be used.</li> <li>k. Develop the indirect fire plan at the same time as the offensive scheme of maneuver. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Integrate direct fires and indirect fires to support maneuver throughout the operation.</li> <li>(2) Plan fires that support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(3) Plan fires to support all phases of the attack.</li> <li>(4) Plan fires for targets of concern (targets that may deter the success of the maneuver).</li> <li>(5) Plan smoke to screen the unit when crossing a danger area, breaching an obstacle, or to obscure known or suspected enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Develop the indirect fire plan to support the defensive scheme of maneuver. Take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Plan fires that support the commander's intent.</li> <li>(2) Plan fires on all likely enemy positions and on areas the enemy may use in the attack, such as— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>(b) Support positions.</li> <li>(c) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(d) Assault positions.</li> <li>(e) Dead space.</li> <li>(f) Flanks.</li> <li>(g) Defiles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Plan fires in front of, on top of, and behind friendly positions to stop likely penetrations or to support a counterattack.</li> <li>(4) Integrate final protective fires (FPFs) into the unit fire and obstacle plans.</li> <li>(5) Plan fires that cover planned or existing obstacles.</li> <li>(6) Plan smoke to screen friendly movements. (Defending units should use smoke sparingly.)</li> <li>(7) Plan illumination.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Unit leaders normally retain control of illumination in the defense.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders and the FIST, if available, prepare for fire support execution. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare an observation plan. Take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designate primary and alternate observers.</li> <li>(2) Brief observers on target tasks and purposes.</li> <li>(3) Identify engagement area (EA).</li> <li>(4) Ensure observers are positioned to observe EA.</li> <li>(5) Consider available assets such as the laser range finders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Prepare a trigger to initiate fires for each target. Take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Include engagement criteria.</li> <li>(2) Prepare trigger lines based on the following:</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(a) Rate of travel by enemy forces to the engagement area.</p> <p>(b) Amount of time required to call for fires.</p> <p>(c) Time of flight of the indirect fire rounds.</p> <p>(d) Clearance of fires at the unit and element level.</p> <p>(e) Possible adjustment times.</p> <p>c. Prepare a trigger for lifting or shifting fires. (For offensive operations, use a minimum safe line.)</p> <p><b>PREPARE</b></p> <p>6. The unit conducts a rehearsal. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Involves observers in unit rehearsals.</p> <p>b. Ensures the unit's primary and alternate communications systems supports the fire support plan.</p> <p>c. Ensures precombat checks have been conducted on equipment according to the SOPs.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders or designated representatives conduct a reconnaissance to confirm the indirect fire plan, if possible.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders distribute the indirect fire support plan/execution matrix to subordinate leaders as a part of the OPORD. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Provide a copy of the fire plan to higher HQ.</p> <p>b. Incorporate the fire support plan into rehearsals.</p> <p>*9. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p><b>EXECUTE</b></p> <p>*10. Unit leaders or the FO employ indirect fire support using available communications. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Ensure all available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result according to the fire plan and execution matrix.</p> <p>b. Ensure the employment of smoke does not degrade the unit mission.</p> <p>c. Adjust the priorities of fire as the battle progresses.</p> <p>d. Use the combat observation lasing team (COLT) when available.</p> <p>e. Call for fire, including:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Proper standardized call-for-fire (CFF) format.</p> <p>(2) Proper radio communications procedures to call for fire.</p> <p>(3) Observer identification and warning order (adjust fire, fire for effect, suppress, or immediate suppression).</p> <p>(4) Target location methods (grid, polar, or shift from a known point).</p> <p>(5) Target description using size and/or shape, nature/nomenclature, activity, and protection/posture.</p> <p>(6) Various techniques for area adjustment, such as—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Successive bracketing.</li> <li>(b) One round adjustment.</li> <li>(c) Creeping fire.</li> </ul> <p>(7) Correct observer target factor and angular deviation.</p> <p>(8) Subsequent corrections.</p> <p>(9) Fire for effect when burst is within 50 meters.</p> <p>*11. Unit leaders or the FO conduct “fire for effect missions.” They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure the impact of the adjustment rounds is close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.</li> <li>b. Request appropriate shell/fuse combination.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If desired effects are not achieved, the observer adjusts the rounds and repeats, changes shell/fuse combination, and requests additional fire for effect volleys.</p> <p><b>ASSESS</b></p> <p>*12. Unit leaders direct the observer to take the following actions if the desired effects are not achieved. The observer—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adjusts the rounds and repeats.</li> <li>b. Changes the shell and or fuse combination.</li> <li>c. Requests additional fire for effect volleys.</li> </ul> <p>*13. Unit leaders or the FO conduct immediate suppression missions. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the target (observer).</li> <li>b. Plot the target accurately.</li> <li>c. Transmit complete call for fire.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensure an accurate target location is close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.</p> <p>e. Ensure final suppression rounds are within 150 meters of the target (if necessary).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If desired effects are not achieved, the observer adjusts the rounds and repeats, changes shell/fuse combination, and requests additional fire for effect volleys.</p> <p>14. The FO observes munitions effects and reports battle damage assessments. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Estimates the extent of damage to the target and or casualties.</p> <p>b. Reports damage assessment to the fire direction center (FDC) providing fires.</p> <p>15. The FO, with laser locator, conducts a high burst and or mean point of impact registration (field artillery [FA] only),when directed. (The FDC transmits orienting data to observer.) He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Orients using orienting data.</p> <p>b. Announces to FDC ready to observe.</p> <p>c. Lases the burst.</p> <p>d. Records and transmits burst location to FDC until FDC terminates registration.</p> <p>*16. Unit leaders or the FO register, confirm, and adjust a parallel sheaf for mortars. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Use successive bracketing.</p> <p>b. Send appropriate corrections to FDC.</p> <p>c. Adjust sheaf to within a 50-meter range and a 40-meter lateral spread between rounds.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS:

Task Number	Task Title
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
061-284-3040	Engage Targets with Close Air Support
061-283-6003	Adjust indirect Fire

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)

07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9406	Knock Out Bunker
17-3-D8008	React to an Obstacle

**TASK:** Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)  
(07-2-5027)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and is in contact with the enemy. The unit must consolidate and reorganize. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions but have the capability to counterattack. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protected posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit consolidates and reorganizes according to the standing operating procedures (SOP) and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit occupies a hasty fighting position with sectors of fire, establishes security, accounts for all personnel and equipment, and reestablishes the chain of command. Wounded in action (WIAs) are identified, stabilized, and prepared for evacuation. Killed in action (KIAs) are identified and prepared for evacuation. Ammunition and supplies are redistributed as needed.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They receive an updated—</p> <p>a. Report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements.</p> <p>b. Enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders position the observation post (OP) forward to provide security. They ensure that—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Members are alert for a possible counterattack.</li> <li>The unit main body is not engaged without warning.</li> </ol> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>5. The unit occupies hasty fighting positions near the objective. It takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishes local security, including:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Evaluates terrain thoroughly.</li> <li>Positions the elements using the clock or the terrain feature technique.</li> <li>Mans key weapons, as required by factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ol> </li> <li>Destroys all organized resistance.</li> <li>Conducts reconnaissance of objective and/or area of operations (AO) to ensure it is free of enemy.</li> <li>Defends against enemy counterattacks.</li> <li>Begins decontamination operations, if required and as factors of METT-TC dictate.</li> <li>Establishes the chain of command.</li> <li>Establishes communications.</li> </ol> <p>*6. Unit leaders assign elements temporary sectors of fire.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders ensure subordinate leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach and ensure mutual support between elements and adjacent units.</p> <p>*8. The unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>*9. Unit leaders report intelligence information of immediate value to next higher HQ.</p> <p>*10. Unit leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>*11. Unit leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the headquarters.</p> <p>*12. Unit leaders coordinate resupply.</p> <p>*13. The unit treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>*14. The unit processes captured documents and/or equipment as required.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<b>ASSESS</b> *15. The unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step		

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-121-4038	Supervise Local Security
031-507-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
081-831-1058	Supervise Casualty Treatment and Evacuation
071-940-0002	Conduct Resupply of a Platoon
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-3107	Process Detainee(s) at Point of Capture (POC)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)



**TASK:** Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9006)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a larger force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a forward or rearward passage of lines. The stationary unit has been identified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has established communications with required units at all echelons. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed under the conditions of: mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) that aid or limit performance, or in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the passage of lines according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The unit completes necessary coordination with higher, adjacent, and stationary elements. The unit passes through the stationary unit with no compromise of security, and complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher headquarters (HQ) order, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct a passage of friendly lines and issue a warning order (WARNO) according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Location and tentative timeline for the passage of lines, including movement times and no later than time.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization during the passage of lines, identifying security and quartering parties as necessary.</li> <li>c. Guidance to conduct rehearsals and any initial movement, initiate surveillance and reconnaissance tasks, and ensure commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*2. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to the TLPs. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct mission analysis by using company intelligence support team (CoIST); focusing on METT-TC; taking advantage of maps, imagery; human intelligence (HUMINT); signal intelligence (SIGINT); unmanned aircraft systems (UASs); unattended ground sensors (UGSs); and other available capabilities.</li> <li>b. Develop a tentative course of action. Take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).</li> <li>(2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Identify security and support positions, if applicable.</li> <li>(4) Mark tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> <li>(5) Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>(6) Identify and assign direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>(7) Organize the unit as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Develop contingency plans on chance contact with the enemy before, during, and after the passage, actions on break down of vehicles during passage, and casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) during the operation.</li> <li>d. Conduct risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and mitigate associated risks.</li> </ul> <p>*3. Unit leaders or designated representatives coordinate with the stationary unit and exchange and/or coordinate the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated enemy situation.</li> <li>b. Friendly situation and disposition.</li> <li>c. Signal operating instructions information.</li> <li>d. Command post location.</li> <li>e. Contact points (primary, alternate).</li> <li>f. Number and type of personnel/vehicles involved in the passage.</li> <li>g. Estimated time of arrival of passing elements.</li> <li>h. Recognition signals.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Verification and/or designation of fire coordination measures.</p> <p>j. Verification of the command relationship with the stationary unit.</p> <p>k. Verification of known obstacle types and locations, and applicable breach locations, passage points, or bypass routes (friendly, existing, and enemy).</p> <p>l. Supporting fires information, to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers and locations.</p> <p>m. Passage lanes data, to include alternate routes, start point, release point, passage points, and checkpoints.</p> <p>n. Location and number of guides and number and type of vehicles.</p> <p>o. Time of passage.</p> <p>p. Rally points (both near and far) and assembly areas.</p> <p>q. Line of departure.</p> <p>r. Battle handover line (BHL) and battle handover criteria for the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector takes place, if applicable.</p> <p>s. Sustainment information, including the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Resupply of Classes III and V.</li> <li>(2) Medical evacuation assets.</li> <li>(3) Handling of enemy prisoners of war.</li> <li>(4) Maintenance requirements and available assets.</li> </ol> <p>t. Action on contact if enemy is encountered during the passage.</p> <p>u. Verification of actions to take place following coordination of the passage.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders or designated representatives complete coordination and preparations for the passage. They take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct tactical movement back to the unit position, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Pass all pertinent information and/or FRAGO to the unit.</li> <li>c. Report all pertinent information from the coordination to the higher commander if acting as liaison for higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Direct subordinate element leaders to complete troop-leading procedures required to plan the passage.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>6. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders coordinate/synchronize actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. The passing unit moves to an assembly area or an attack position.</p> <p>10. Designated liaison personnel link up with guides and confirm coordination information with stationary unit.</p> <p>11. The unit conducts tactical movement to the passage point. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with stationary unit.</li> </ul> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Uses covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.</li> <li>c. Uses best formation and movement technique based on factors of METT-TC.</li> <li>d. Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security based on the formation selected.</li> <li>e. Can employ additional fire control measures to minimize the risk of fratricide.</li> </ul> <p>12. The unit moves through the passage point. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Keeps communications with stationary unit to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Displays designated recognition signal on all vehicles, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Reports arrival time at the passage point to higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Passes through the passage point without halting or blocking it.</li> </ul> <p>13. The unit moves along the passage lane. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts tactical movement through the passage lane.</li> <li>b. Orients weapon systems in the direction of known or suspected enemy contact.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Follows directions given by guides at traffic control points.</p> <p>d. Uses alternate lanes if situation dictates.</p> <p>*14. Unit leaders or representatives keep higher HQ informed. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Report graphic control measures for passage.</p> <p>b. Send situation report as needed during execution.</p> <p>c. Report completion of the passage.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>15. If the passage is forward, the unit crosses the BHL and continues the mission.</p> <p>16. If the passage is rearward, the unit crosses the BHL and takes the specified following actions:</p> <p>a. Moves to the location designated in the OPOD without halting or blocking the passage lane.</p> <p>b. Occupies an assembly area or continues on assigned mission as specified in the OPOD.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
113-637-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-329-1030	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted

07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
17-3-D8004	React to Air Attack

**TASK:** Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support (63-2-4546)

(ADP 4-0)

(FM 5-19)

(FM 55-30)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives an operations order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct resupply operations upon the arrival of the logistics package (LOGPAC), or the commander determines that routine or emergency resupply is necessary. The unit has established communications with subordinate, adjacent and higher headquarters (HQ), and is passing information according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. Threat capabilities cover a full spectrum to include information gathering; hostile force sympathizers; terrorist activities to include suicide bombings; and conventional, air supported, and reinforced squad operations in a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective procedure 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable (FMC) status. It receives supplies and services as available and conducts distribution as needed to subordinate elements. The unit completes resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD and/or FRAGO, or command guidance. The unit complies with ROE. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The executive officer (XO)/first sergeant (1SG) monitors supply status and reports status as required by unit tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). (101-92A-4216)</p> <p>a. Compile accurate supply status (by class) from leaders of each platoon/section/element. Reports cover the following supply classes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Class I (Rations).</li> <li>(2) Class II (Supplies and Equipment).</li> <li>(3) Class III (Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants [POL] products).</li> <li>(4) Class IV (Construction/Barrier Materials).</li> <li>(5) Class V (Ammunition).</li> <li>(6) Class VI (Personnel Demand Items).</li> <li>(7) Class VII (Major End Items).</li> <li>(8) Class VIII (Medical Supplies).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(9) Class IX (Repair Parts).</p> <p>(10) Class X (Nonmilitary Program Materials such as agriculture and economic development).</p> <p>(11) Water.</p> <p>b. Submit consolidated logistical status (LOGSTAT) report through unit commander to higher HQ S-4 and/or forward support company (FSC).</p> <p>2. Unit reports personnel status to the higher HQ S-1 using personnel status (PERSTAT) report, requests replacements, and processes reassignment/ replacements.</p> <p>a. Platoon sergeants (PSGs) report personnel strength/losses (with battle roster numbers) to platoon/element leader and XO/1SG using PERSTAT.</p> <p>b. 1SG compiles report of personnel strength, losses, and battle roster changes and submits roll-up PERSTAT through the company commander to the higher HQ S-1.</p> <p>c. 1SG and PSGs reassign remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.</p> <p>d. 1SG and PSGs assign replacements using the same criteria.</p> <p>e. Notifies s operations officer (SOO) when LOGPAC Operations vehicles are fully loaded and ready to move.</p> <p>f. Verifies that trail party is equipped to recover vehicles that develop maintenance problems during the combat resupply operations convoy.</p> <p>3. Unit reports vehicle status and requests resupply or other support as needed.</p> <p>a. PSGs and section leaders report vehicle and equipment status to include battle damage assessment (BDA), to platoon leaders and XO/1SG.</p> <p>b. PSGs and section leaders report maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support requirements to platoon leaders and XO/1SG.</p> <p>c. XO/1SG compiles platoon/section reports/requests and maintenance forecast and submits them to the higher HQ S-4 and/or supporting maintenance unit.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. They forward SP crossing report to HQ when unit elements have crossed the SP using FBCB2, MTS, or FM radio.</p> <p>e. They employ correct signal operating instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI) codes in all transmissions.</p> <p>f. They enforce march discipline using FBCB2, MTS, FM radio, or proper visual signals.</p> <p>*4. XO/1SG coordinate logistical package (LOGPAC) with higher HQ S-4 and/or forward support company (FSC) (191-379-4407). He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Verify status of resupply/support requests.</p> <p>b. Coordinate actions at the logistics release point (LRP).</p> <p>c. Assume position(s) along march route that provides command presence at points of decision for reaction to changing tactical situation.</p> <p>d. Maintain situational awareness at all times using FBCB2 and MTS.</p> <p>e. Forward en route CBRN information.</p> <p>f. Enforce all movement policies defined in the TSOP and movement order, with emphasis on formation, distances, speeds, passing procedures, and halts.</p> <p>g. Report all threat sightings using SALUTE (size activity location unit time equipment) Report format.</p> <p>h. Adjust formation distances and speed consistent with CBRN, terrain, and light conditions.</p> <p>i. Enforce security measures, with emphasis on air guard's surveillance, manning of automatic weapons, and concealment of critical cargo.</p> <p>j. Inform vehicle operators by FBCB2, radio, MTS, or proper visual signals, any violations of march discipline, security procedures, or changes to established orders.</p> <p>k. Enforce communications security (COMSEC) measures to include radio silence periods according to the OPOD and SOI/SSI.</p> <p>5. The supply sergeant (under the supervision of the Headquarters and Headquarters Company [HHC] or FSC commander) assembles the LOGPAC. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Obtain requested supplies from FSC or higher HQ S-4.</p> <p>b. Obtain Class II, IV, VI, and VII supplies from higher HQ S-4 personnel.</p> <p>c. Consolidate replacement personnel and those returning from medical treatment.</p> <p>d. Consolidate vehicles returning from maintenance.</p> <p>e. Obtain mail from higher HQ S-1.</p> <p>f. Obtain personnel action documents from S1 section (to include award, finance, and legal documents).</p> <p>*6. 1SG/XO meets LOGPAC elements at the LRP. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Move to the LRP and meets the supply sergeant and LOGPAC.</p> <p>b. Supervise actions at LRP as coordinated and/or specified by unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Occupy hasty defensive positions with 360-degree protective coverage (passengers).</p> <p>d. Report scheduled halt to HQ.</p> <p>e. Direct performance of preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles.</p> <p>f. Inspect vehicle loads for safety and security.</p> <p>g. Begin departure at time specified by orders or designated by platoon leader.</p> <p>h. Report resumption of march to headquarters.</p> <p>*7. 1SG/XO coordinates unit resupply. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Determine method of resupply (service station or tailgate).</p> <p>b. Determine location(s) of resupply.</p> <p>c. Determine unit priority for resupply if all required supplies/services are not available.</p> <p>d. Determine unit order of resupply to include attachments.</p> <p>e. Execute LOGPAC operations according to TSOP or issues FRAGO notifying unit of changes to normal LOGPAC operations.</p> <p>f. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ.</p> <p>8. The unit receives service station resupply if applicable. The following actions are taken:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. 1SG/XO escort LOGPAC move to designated resupply location along covered and concealed route.</p> <p>b. The unit security element conducts link-up with 1SG/XO and LOGPAC to organize resupply site, establishing security and use available cover and concealment.</p> <p>c. 1SG/XO issues FRAGO to PSGs and section sergeants on the organization of the resupply site, specific locations of medics, maintenance, supply points, mortuary affairs collection points and enemy prisoners of war (EPW) collection points.</p> <p>d. Support platoons/sections/elements conduct tactical movement to resupply site.</p> <p>e. Support platoons/sections/elements conduct appropriate actions of service station resupply as directed by the commander and/or unit SOP.</p> <p>*9. Convoy commander conducts night convoy. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Brief drivers on night conditions.</p> <p>b. Provide visual adjustment period if march began during daylight.</p> <p>c. Prepare vehicles for blackout conditions according to the TSOP.</p> <p>d. Maintain prescribed interval between vehicles.</p> <p>e. Direct the wearing of night vision goggles (selected personnel).</p> <p>f. Direct the wearing of regular eye protection goggles (all other personnel).</p> <p>g. Enforce the use of ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>*10. Convoy commander conducts convoy through an urban area. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Verify all weight, height, and width restrictions along route of march.</p> <p>b. Employ close column formation.</p> <p>c. Ensure that vehicle drivers obey traffic control directions unless escorted by military or host nation (HN) police.</p> <p>d. Employ directional guide's at all critical intersections.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>*11. The convoy commander coordinates/monitors actions at the designated LRP. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify that lead vehicle has arrived at the LRP.</li> <li>b. Verify that all vehicles have arrived at the LRP.</li> <li>c. Release unit serials to the supported unit's 1SG or his/her designated represented representative.</li> <li>d. Direct unit serial reassembly at the LRP following unit resupply actions.</li> <li>e. Lead reassembled combat resupply operations convoy back to release point (RP) in the battalion field trains area.</li> <li>f. Ensure that all back haul logistics commodities arrive at the proper location.</li> <li>g. Forward situation report (SITREP) to headquarters using FBCB2, MTS, or radio.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
101-92A-4216	Coordinate Logistical Requirements
191-379-4407	Plan Convoy Security Operations
101-92A-8030	Manage Unit Supply Operations

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
63-2-4519	Transport Supplies, Equipment, and Personnel
63-2-4000	Coordinate Replenishment/Sustainment Operations
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-2-9224)

(FM 3-11.5)

(FM 3-11)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating in a contaminated environment. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4) is increasing and protective gear is in danger of contamination. The time and tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each Soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, an operational decontamination unit is available and is tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**STANDARDS:** The element decontaminates individual gear and conducts MOPP4 gear exchange (using the buddy team, triple team, or individual (emergency) method) without sustaining additional casualties from chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) contamination. The element limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination from equipment. The element reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to the element's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and field manual (FM) guidance and/or reduces chemical and biological (CB) contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The element leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes the priorities for decontamination. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives input from subordinate leaders and staff.</li> <li>b. Directs decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should include, as a minimum, the following:</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Decontamination operations should be done between one and six hours after becoming contaminated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the contaminated element.</li> <li>b. The location of the contaminated element.</li> <li>c. The frequency and call sign of the contaminated element.</li> <li>d. The time that the element became contaminated.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. The number of personnel requiring a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>f. The number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that are contaminated.</p> <p>g. The type of contamination.</p> <p>h. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and an element decontamination team).</p> <p>3. The element coordinates with higher HQ. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Obtains permission to conduct decontamination.</p> <p>b. Obtains the necessary support to conduct decontamination.</p> <p>c. Selects the link up point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</p> <p>d. Coordinates with supporting elements.</p> <p>e. Requests replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with supporting units to determine if they need to exchange MOPP gear also.</p> <p>*4. The element leader and CBRN specialists select a site to conduct the operation and ensure that the selected site provides:</p> <p>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Good drainage.</p> <p>c. Easy access and exit routes (off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Close proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash-down (plan for 100 gallons per vehicle).</p> <p>e. A large enough area to accommodate the elements involved in operational decontamination (110 square meters for both the vehicle wash-down site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p> <p>5. The element coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). It takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Notifies higher HQ of the site selected for the operational decontamination.</p> <p>b. Establishes communications with the decontamination unit.</p> <p>c. Ensures that the decontamination unit knows the link up locations and the selected decontamination site.</p> <p>6. The element and supporting units move to the decontamination site. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Meet at the link up point as coordinated.</p> <p>b. Provide security at the link up point and the decontamination site.</p> <p>7. The element prepares for operational decontamination. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Sets up the decontamination site.</p> <p>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew sets up a vehicle wash-down site.</p> <p>(2) The contaminated element sets up a MOPP gear exchange site no less than 50 meters upwind from the vehicle wash-down at a 45 degree angle.</p> <p>(3) The remainder of the element prepares its equipment for decontamination.</p> <p>b. Conducts preparatory actions in the predecontamination marshalling area.</p> <p>(1) Vehicle crews (except operators) dismount unless they have an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</p> <p>(2) Dismounted crews remove mud and camouflage from vehicles.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when crews do not dismount.</p> <p>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews—</p> <p>(a) Ensure that vehicle operators are briefed (include the use of overhead cover and concealment and proper intervals).</p> <p>(b) Ensure that vehicles are buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings closed or covered to include muzzles).</p> <p>(4) Moves vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle wash-down site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Moves dismounted crews and all other Soldiers in the contaminated element to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>*8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle wash-down site. He ensures that—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle operators maintain proper intervals between vehicles while processing through the wash-down station.</li> <li>b. Decontamination crew washes vehicles properly.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Starts at the top and work down.</li> <li>(2) Sprays hot, soapy water for 2 to 4 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Wears a toxicological agent-protective (TAP) or wet-weather gear over MOPP gear.</li> <li>(4) Monitors water consumption.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Operators move to the MOPP gear exchange after vehicle has been washed down.</li> <li>d. Operators move to the assembly area (AA).</li> </ol> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange. It takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepares the equipment decontamination station with super tropical bleach (STB) dry mix.</li> <li>b. Briefs MOPP gear exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Places the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanges MOPP gear using the buddy team, triple team or individual (emergency) method.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The individual emergency method is used only when a person does not have a buddy to help and the risks of MOPP failure demands that an MOPP exchange occur.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Moves to the AA after they complete the MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ol> <p>10. Supporting elements process through the MOPP gear exchange site.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>11. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination using a nuclear, biological, chemical CBRN 5 report to higher HQ.</p> <p>*12. The element leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*13. The element leader reports to higher HQ. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Reports the completion of decontamination and the location of the vehicle wash-down and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p>b. Requests permission to perform unmasking procedures if no hazards are detected through testing.</p> <p>c. Determines the adequacy of the decontamination and adjusts the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>14. The element continues its mission.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-507-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
551-721-1352	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9483	React to Nuclear Attack
03-3-D0035	React to a Chemical Attack

**TASK:** Treat Casualties (08-2-0003)

(FM 4-25.11)

(AR 190-8)

(FM 4-02.7)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has medical treatment personnel and/or combat lifesavers. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers are wounded and may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Unit personnel perform first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. A higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher HQ standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. A treatment plan is available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air; ground; chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN); or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** Casualties are treated according to FM 4-25.11 and appropriate SOP(s). At MOPP 4 performance, degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and evacuation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties (081-831-1055, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, and 805C-PAD-2060). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implement treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitor treatment to ensure all casualties are treated.</li> <li>c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties.</li> <li>d. Monitor battlefield stress reduction and prevention procedures.</li> <li>e. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinate with higher HQ for additional medical support.</li> <li>g. Coordinate replenishment of Class VIII supplies with supporting medical element according to SOPs.</li> <li>h. Direct distribution of Class VIII supplies according to SOPs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Enforce quality control procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel perform first aid treatment (081-831-1003, 081-831-1005, 081-831-1007, 081-831-1008, 081-831-1025, 081-831-1026, 081-831-1032, 081-831-1033, 081-831-1034, 081-831-1044, 081-831-1045). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualties.</li> <li>b. Administer life-saving first aid treatment (cardiopulmonary resuscitation), if required.</li> <li>c. Control hemorrhage.</li> <li>d. Dress wounds.</li> <li>e. Splint suspected fractures.</li> <li>f. Provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</li> <li>g. Provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</li> <li>i. Prevent shock.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment (081-831-0038, 081-831-0039, 081-831-1003, 081-831-1005, 081-831-1007, 081-831-1008, 081-831-1044, 081-831-1045, 081-833-0033, 081-833-0047, 081-833-0092). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualty for condition and type treatment needed.</li> <li>b. Measure casualty's vital signs.</li> <li>c. Initiate a field medical card.</li> <li>d. Insert oropharyngeal airway (J-Tube) in an unconscious casualty.</li> <li>e. Apply a splint to a fractured limb.</li> <li>f. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties.</li> <li>g. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock.</li> <li>h. Identify environmental injuries.</li> <li>i. Treat environmental injuries.</li> <li>j. Manage casualties with combat operational stress reactions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers evacuate casualties to supporting medical element (081-831-0101, 081-831-1046, 081-833-0092). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>b. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>c. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>d. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>e. Employ appropriate manual carry if litter is not available.</li> <li>f. Transport casualty without causing further injury according to SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
081-831-0038	Treat a Casualty For a Heat Injury
081-831-0039	Treat a Casualty For a Cold Injury
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1008	Perform First Aid for Heat Injuries
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding of an Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1044	Perform First Aid for Nerve Agent Injury
081-831-1045	Perform First Aid for Cold Injuries
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
081-831-1055	Ensure Unit Combat Lifesaver Requirements Are Met
081-833-0033	Initiate an Intravenous Infusion
081-833-0047	Initiate Treatment for Hypovolemic Shock
081-833-0092	Transport a Casualty with a Suspected Spinal Injury
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-600-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Telephone

113-637-2001      Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net  
805C-PAD-2060      Report Casualties

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-3-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct an Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)

**TASK:** Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0004)

(FM 4-25.11) (AR 190-8) (AR 385-10) (AR 600-8-1) (ATTP 4-02)  
 (FM 4-02.7) (TC 3-34.489)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses are reorganized and established. Casualties are evacuated from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. Wounded enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties are evacuated to designated casualty collection points (CCPs) with appropriate security. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. Higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher HQ standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, to include air; ground; chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN); or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** Casualties are evacuated as soon as tactical situation permitted in according to FM 4-25.11, OPORD, appropriate SOP(s), and provisions of the Geneva Conventions. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to evacuate casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The commander and leaders supervise evacuation of casualties (113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitor casualty evacuation operations for compliance with SOPs.</li> <li>b. Identify casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identify evacuation requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervise preparation of casualties for evacuation.</li> <li>e. Coordinate evacuation of casualties from unit area with the area defense command post (CP) according to SOPs.</li> <li>f. Coordinate security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and area defense CP.</li> <li>g. Disseminate evacuation information to unit personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to the area defense CP according to SOPs.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for evacuation (101-92Y-0005, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, 805C-PAD-2060). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide first aid treatment to casualties (08-2-0003).</li> <li>b. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collect classified documents such as signal operation instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secure custody of organizational equipment according to SOPs.</li> <li>e. Forward casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Evacuate casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>d. Evacuate casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to a medical treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Load maximum number of casualties.</li> <li>b. Secure casualties in vehicle.</li> <li>c. Evacuate casualties without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>*6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation (081-831-0101, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, 301-371-1050). They take the following actions:</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmit request according to OPORD and SOPs.</li> <li>b. Select landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off.</li> <li>c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervise security of landing site according to the SOPs.</li> <li>e. Ensure landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to SOPs, if required.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques.</li> <li>b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew.</li> <li>c. Load casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employ safety procedures according to SOPs.</li> <li>e. Employ environmental protection procedures according to SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel evacuate chemically contaminated casualties (031-503-1035, 081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Mark contaminated casualties according to SOPs.</li> <li>c. Notify supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Evacuate casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protect casualties from further contamination during evacuation.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel evacuate EPW casualties (081-831-1046, 181-105-1001). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain security of EPW casualties according to SOPs.</li> <li>b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.</li> <li>c. Evacuate EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Conventions and SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
101-92Y-0005	Enforce Compliance With Property Accountability Policies
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-600-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Telephone
113-637-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net
181-105-1001	Comply With the Law of War and the Geneva and Hague Conventions
301-371-1050	Implement Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0001	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)

**TASK:** Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) (34-5-0471)

(FM 2-19.4)

(FM 2-91.4)

**CONDITION:** The team is supporting a unit conducting stability operations or support operations in an operational environment. The company/troop area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AOI) are established. Command and Control (C2) Information Systems (INFOSYS) are operational and are passing information according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). Communications are established with the battalion S2 and adjacent teams for coordination of intelligence information, tasking, reporting, and collaboration. The team has digital analytical, biometric, cellular exploitation, document and media exploitation, and photographic tools available. The team has the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces, civilian noncombatants, governmental and nongovernmental organizations, and media organizations may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**STANDARD:** The team developed the unit intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, conducted patrol intelligence pre-briefings, facilitated walk-in informants, evaluated ISR reporting, and updated the unit ISR plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The team develops the company ISR plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines priority intelligence requirements (PIRs)/intelligence requirements (IRs) that apply to the company AO and AOI.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Updates the situation map with current named areas of interest (NAI) and target areas of interest (TAI).</li> <li>(2) Obtains the company commander's initial PIR.</li> <li>(3) Recommends revised company PIR/IR to the company commander.</li> <li>(4) Receives the commander's approval of the PIR/IR.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determine which PIR and IR can be answered with organic assets taking into consideration availability, capability, sustainability, vulnerability, and performance history.</li> <li>c. Develop indicators and specific information requirements (SIRs) for each PIR.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Review external assets tasked to perform collection against PIR/IR in the company AO and AOI.</p> <p>e. Develop ISR tasks for subordinate company elements.</p> <p>f. Develop an ISR synchronization matrix (ISM) depicting organic and external ISR collection to be performed in the company AO and AOI.</p> <p>g. Prepare the unit ISR plan.</p> <p>h. Disseminate ISR plan to company elements, higher S2, and adjacent ISTs.</p> <p>i. Submit requests for information (RFI) to the battalion S2 for external ISR collection against PIR/IR in the company AO and AOI.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Requests for external ISR collection should be put in terms of capabilities required, rather than specific types of ISR assets. Specific ISR assets may already be tasked and unavailable, whereas a request for a capability (for example, full motion video coverage of an NAI or MSR) could be tasked by higher headquarters to a number of potential ISR assets. The IST must also consider that many aerial assets require 72 hours prior notice for tasking thru the Air Tasking Order (ATO).</p> <p>2. The team conducts patrol intelligence pre-briefings.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The company intelligence support team (CoIST) must have a standard patrol intelligence pre-brief format consistent with higher headquarters tasking and reporting requirements. The format should be included in the unit TACSOP. The patrol intelligence pre-brief is focused on providing information to the patrol, which is separate from the patrol mission briefing given by the small unit leader or commander leading the patrol.</p> <p>a. Provides updated information from intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The effects of terrain and weather.</li> <li>(2) Updates to the company operational environment.</li> <li>(3) Description of the operational effects on the mission.</li> <li>(4) Evaluation of threat capabilities.</li> <li>(5) Assessment of threat courses of action.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Describe significant activities in the company AO and AOI over that past 24-48 hours.</p> <p>c. Describe ISR collection assets and priorities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Review the commander's PIR and IR.</li> <li>(2) Describe NAI within the company AO and AOI.</li> <li>(3) Describe specific expectations of SOR.</li> <li>(4) Provide the ISR matrix to the patrol.</li> </ol> <p>d. Provide updated graphics supporting the patrol mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Routes to be taken.</li> <li>(2) NAIs and TAIs relating to the patrol.</li> <li>(3) Location of objective(s) for the patrol.</li> <li>(4) Imagery of the patrol route, NAIs, and objectives.</li> </ol> <p>e. Provide current assessments and future expectations.</p> <p>f. Distribute the high-payoff target list (HPTL).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Describe each target on the list.</li> <li>(2) Distribute the HPTL to patrol members.</li> </ol> <p>g. Provide updates on key personalities in the company AO/AOI.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Spheres of influence (SOI).</li> <li>(2) Groups the person is associated with.</li> <li>(3) Events the person has participated in.</li> <li>(4) Threats posed by the individual.</li> </ol> <p>h. Distribute the be on the lookout (BOLO) list.</p> <p>i. Provide target packet folders for high-value targets (HVT) expected to be encountered during the patrol.</p> <p>j. Provide the patrol with automated tools for data collection, if available.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Biometric systems and updated database files.</li> <li>(2) Digital cameras.</li> <li>(3) Cellular exploitation (CELLEX) systems.</li> <li>(4) Electronic media exploitation (MEDEX) systems.</li> <li>(5) Evidence collection kits.</li> <li>(6) Blank target packet folders to be completed during tactical questioning or upon detaining an individual.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>k. Provide updates assessments on civilian considerations in terms of ASCOPE.</p> <p>l. Remind patrol members of the limitations to conducting tactical questioning.</p> <p>3. The team facilitates walk-in informants.</p> <p>a. Establishes a discreet location for the informant meeting.</p> <p>b. Coordinates security for the meeting location.</p> <p>c. Conducts screening of the walk-in informant.</p> <p>(1) Obtain informant identification data.</p> <p>(2) Allow the informant to convey his story.</p> <p>(3) Determine how the informant obtained the information.</p> <p>(4) Determine if the informant provided the information to anyone else.</p> <p>(5) Determine if the informant has reported previous information to U.S. forces.</p> <p>(6) Determine if the informant is willing to be re-contacted.</p> <p>d. Documents walk-in informant information.</p> <p>e. Notifies the commander and S2 of the informant's desire to talk.</p> <p>4. The team evaluates ISR reporting from unit elements.</p> <p>a. Determine relevancy of reporting to PIRs and IRs.</p> <p>b. Updates ISR synchronization matrix (ISM) as PIR and IR are answered.</p> <p>c. Provide feedback to collectors and exploiters.</p> <p>5. The team revises the unit ISR plan.</p> <p>a. Recommends to the commander the re-tasking of ISR assets.</p> <p>b. Updates the ISR plan.</p> <p>c. Disseminates the revised ISR plan to unit elements, the battalion S2, and adjacent ISTs.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)

052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9113	Plan for the Integration of C-IED Assets in a COIN Environment
052-703-9114	Respond to an IED at the Company Level
150-718-5315	Establish the Common Operational Picture
150-718-6717	Plan for Possible Improvised Explosive Device Threats
301-192-6001	Apply Predictive Analysis to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6002	Apply Pattern Analysis Products to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6003	Prepare Request for Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance in Support of Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
34-5-0470	Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations
34-5-0472	Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting

#### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs
05-3-D0019	Conduct 5 and 25 Meter Checks

**TASK:** Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations (34-5-0470)

(FM 2-01.3)

(FM 2-19.4)

**CONDITIONS:** The team is supporting a unit that is conducting stability operations or support operations in an operational environment. The company's area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AOI) are established. Command and control (C2) information systems (INFOSYS) are operational and are passing information according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). Communications are established with the battalion S2 and adjacent teams for coordination of intelligence information, tasking, reporting, and collaboration. The team has digital analytical, biometric, cellular exploitation, document and media exploitation, and photographic tools available. Coalition forces, civilian noncombatants, governmental and nongovernmental organizations, and media organizations may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The team provides situational awareness in terms of processing combat information, conducting patrol intelligence debriefings, processing information and material gathered during site exploitation, applying intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products at unit level, and presenting intelligence according to the TACSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The team tracks significant activities that occur in the company AO and AOI. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Logs events according to the TACSOP.</li><li>b. Conducts event pattern analysis. Takes the following actions:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>(1) Ambushes.</li><li>(2) Sniper incidents.</li><li>(3) IED incidents.</li><li>(4) Indirect fire incidents.</li><li>(5) Murders.</li><li>(6) Kidnappings.</li></ul></li><li>c. Incorporates the information into current databases or IPB products.</li><li>d. Updates the situation map (SITMAP).</li></ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The team updates pattern analysis products. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updates the coordinates register(s)/incident map of cumulative events occurring within the AO.</li> <li>b. Updates the pattern analysis plot sheet depicting the time and date of significant incidents occurring in the AO.</li> </ul> <p>3. The team updates link analysis products. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updates time event charts depicting events in chronological order.</li> <li>b. Updates association matrixes showing connectivity between key individuals and events or activity.</li> <li>c. Updates activities matrixes depicting an array of personalities compared against activities, locations, events, or other appropriate information.</li> <li>d. Updates link analysis diagrams depicting the connections between people, groups, or activities.</li> </ul> <p>4. The team conducts patrol intelligence debriefings. It takes the following actions:</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The IST must have a standard patrol intelligence debrief format consistent with higher headquarters (HQ) reporting requirements. The format should be documented in the unit TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtains the patrol's observations of actions and inaction in named areas of interest (NAI). Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determines whether PIRs, IRs, and SORs have been answered.</li> <li>(2) Determines whether host nation information requirements have been answered.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collects target folders completed by the patrol.</li> <li>c. Obtains the following information about the route the patrol was tasked to take: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Status of the route.</li> <li>(2) Observations made along the route.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Obtains the following patrol observations about the populace:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Key engagements with civilians during the patrol.</p> <p>(2) Topics discussed with members of the populace.</p> <p>(3) Observed or perceived attitudes of the populace.</p> <p>(4) Unusual activity among the population.</p> <p>(5) Unusual sights, sounds, or odors noticed by patrol members.</p> <p>(6) Assessments, observations, and notes from key leader engagements (KLE) during the patrol.</p> <p>(7) New posters, graffiti, or propaganda visible.</p> <p>e. Obtains changes to the terrain or physical environment in the AO or AOI.</p> <p>f. Obtains the patrol's town/village assessment.</p> <p>g. Obtains the patrol's host nation security force assessment.</p> <p>h. Obtains digital photographs made during the patrol.</p> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Allows patrol members to describe what is occurring in each photo.</p> <p>(2) Obtains from patrol members the names of individuals in the photographs, if known.</p> <p>i. Enters all patrol data into available databases.</p> <p>j. Submits reports on patrol activities according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>5. The team processes information obtained during unit site exploitation missions. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Collects photographs taken during the mission.</p> <p>b. Obtains information gathered through tactical questioning during the site exploitation.</p> <p>c. Collects target packets completed during the site exploitation.</p> <p>d. Down loads biometric data collected.</p> <p>e. Collects data obtained through cellular exploitation (CELLEX) at the site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Collects data obtained through electronic media exploitation (MEDEX).</p> <p>g. Collects documents seized at the site.</p> <p>h. Collects all biometric, cellular exploitation, and media exploitation equipment from the element that conducted the site exploitation.</p> <p>i. Conducts analysis of all data collected to update company target folders.</p> <p>j. Forwards all collected material to higher echelon intelligence elements according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>k. Updates databases according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>l. Reports site exploitation results to the battalion S2 and commander according to with the TACSOP.</p> <p>6. The team updates the analysis of the operational environment in the company AO and AOI. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Analyzes the characteristics of the environment.</p> <p>b. Analyzes the military aspects of weather.</p> <p>c. Assesses the following civilian considerations (ASCOPE) in the operational environment:</p> <p><b>NOTE.</b> The acronym ASCOPE refers to the civilian considerations of area, structures, capabilities, organizations, people, and events.</p> <p>(1) Areas included in the AO and AOI are the following:</p> <p>(a) Government centers.</p> <p>(b) Political boundaries.</p> <p>(c) Trade routes or main supply routes (MSR).</p> <p>(d) Commercial, market, and residential zones.</p> <p>(e) Social, political, religious, or criminal enclaves.</p> <p>(f) Agricultural and mining regions.</p> <p>(g) Displaced person or refugee centers.</p> <p>(2) Structures present in the AO and AOI are the following:</p> <p>(a) Street and urban patterns.</p> <p>(b) Power plants and dams.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Communications towers.</p> <p>(d) Religious buildings.</p> <p>(e) Television and radio stations.</p> <p>(f) Hospitals.</p> <p>(g) Subterranean routes within the area (tunnels and sewers).</p> <p>(h) Schools.</p> <p>(i) Prisons or jails.</p> <p>(3) Capabilities of public and commercial services in the AO and AOI are the following:</p> <p>(a) Law enforcement and fire services, to include their relationship to the military.</p> <p>(b) Electrical services.</p> <p>(c) Water supply and sewage.</p> <p>(d) Fuel distribution.</p> <p>(e) Transportation services.</p> <p>(f) Public communications.</p> <p>(g) Health services.</p> <p>(h) Availability of basic necessities such as food, clothing, and shelter.</p> <p>(4) Organizations that are factors in the AO and AOI are the following:</p> <p>(a) Host nation governmental agencies, to include military forces.</p> <p>(b) Religious groups or organizations.</p> <p>(c) Criminal organizations, to include their relationship to the population, political parties, and the police.</p> <p>(d) Labor organizations.</p> <p>(e) Community or fraternal organizations.</p> <p>(f) U.S. Government agencies.</p> <p>(g) Nongovernmental organizations (NGOs).</p> <p>(h) U.N. agencies.</p> <p>(5) People located within the AO and AOI are the following:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(a) Demographics of the population to include such factors as ethnic groups, age distribution, and income groups.</p> <p>(b) Tribes and clans present.</p> <p>(c) Perceptions of the culture.</p> <p>(d) Loyalties of the population.</p> <p>(e) Authority figures present, to include village or tribal elders.</p> <p>(f) Key communicators.</p> <p>(6) Events within the AO and AOI are the following:</p> <p>(a) National or religious holidays.</p> <p>(b) Planned or anticipated civil disturbances.</p> <p>(c) Agricultural or marketplace cycles.</p> <p>(d) Elections.</p> <p>(e) Celebrations.</p> <p>d. Applies current rules of engagement (ROE) and legal restrictions (treaties or agreements) to civil considerations in the company AO and AOI.</p> <p>e. Analyzes the limits of the company AO and determines whether the AO is—</p> <p>(1) Consistent with specified plans and orders.</p> <p>(2) Sufficient to accomplish assigned missions.</p> <p>f. Analyzes the limits of the area of influence and the AOI. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Assesses the area of influence including all geographic areas, ethnically populated areas, religious factors, or economic factors that could impact company operations.</p> <p>(2) Determines whether the AOI is sufficient to include all areas from which the threat could impact company missions.</p> <p>g. Determines intelligence gaps in the aspects of the operational environment using existing databases.</p> <p>h. Initiates collection of information required to complete IPB. Takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Reconnaissance of the AO or AOI is offering the best means of confirming terrain analysis and answering gaps in knowledge of the military aspects of terrain.</p> <p>(1) Determines whether organic unit capabilities could answer gaps in information on the company's operational environment.</p> <p>(2) Recommends to the commander the use of organic unit ISR assets to fill intelligence gaps in the operational environment in the company AO.</p> <p>(3) Submits requests for information (RFI) to the battalion S2 for gaps the unit cannot answer.</p> <p>7. The team updates effects of the environment on company operations. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Assesses the completeness of IPB terrain analysis as it relates to the company AO and AOI, including—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Cross country mobility.</li> <li>(2) Lines of communications (LOC) (transportation, communications, power).</li> <li>(3) Vegetation type and distribution.</li> <li>(4) Surface drainage and configuration.</li> <li>(5) Surface materials.</li> <li>(6) Obstacles.</li> <li>(7) Infrastructure.</li> <li>(8) Flood zones.</li> <li>(9) Rotary wing aircraft landing zones.</li> </ol> <p>b. Assesses the weather effects on terrain for suitable locations or routes in the company AO and AOI, including—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation posts.</li> <li>(2) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Infiltration and exfiltration routes.</li> <li>(4) Engagement areas.</li> <li>(5) Battle positions.</li> <li>(6) Collection asset or weapon system locations.</li> </ol> <p>c. Analyzes the military aspects of the terrain (OAKOC) in the company AO and AOI, including—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation and fields of fire.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Key terrain.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> <li>(5) Cover and concealment.</li> </ul> <p>8. The team updates the evaluation of the threat in the company AO and AOI. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzes threat capabilities, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Composition of threat forces and cells and their affiliated political, religious, or ethnic organizations.</li> <li>(2) Disposition of threat forces or cells within the company AO or AOI.</li> <li>(3) Threat force and cell tactics or accepted principles of operation.</li> <li>(4) Logistical or monetary support of the threat cells.</li> <li>(5) Operational effectiveness of the threat cells in the AO and AOI.</li> <li>(6) Level of training of threat cells.</li> <li>(7) Ability to recruit new personnel into threat cells.</li> <li>(8) Ability to travel for planning and coordination.</li> <li>(9) All forms of support available to threat cells, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Local support from the population.</li> <li>(b) Regional support in the form of sanctuary, security, or transportation.</li> <li>(c) National support that can be in the forms of moral, physical, or financial.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Updates the threat model. Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determines whether pattern trends are consistent or changing.</li> <li>(2) Determines whether activities fit anticipated threat courses of action (COA).</li> <li>(3) Develops or updates threat tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP).</li> <li>(4) Refines the threat situation template.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Forecasts threat future actions.</p> <p>(6) Identifies potential targets.</p> <p>(7) Converts threat patterns of operation to graphics.</p> <p>(8) Describes threat tactics and options.</p> <p>(9) Determines high-value targets (HVT) and high-payoff targets (HPT) located within the company AO and AOI.</p> <p>(10) Updates company named areas of interest (NAI).</p> <p>(11) Formulates proposed or updated company priority intelligence requirements (PIRs).</p> <p>(12) Updates ASCOPE assessments.</p> <p>c. Assesses company operational trends for vulnerability to threat activities.</p> <p>d. Describes threat capabilities in terms of actions they can be expected to take.</p> <p>9. Analyzes threat courses of action in the company AO and AOI. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Assesses the threats likely objectives and desired end state.</p> <p>b. Assesses the full set of courses of action available to the threat, including actions—</p> <p>(1) Disruptive to friendly force or coalition operations.</p> <p>(2) Likely to kill large numbers of friendly forces or civilians.</p> <p>(3) Effective in discouraging popular support for friendly forces.</p> <p>(4) Profitable in terms of amount of ransom gained.</p> <p>(5) Effective at gaining supporters.</p> <p>(6) With positive propaganda effect to be gained.</p> <p>c. Prioritizes threat courses of action in the company AO and AOI and determines the most—</p> <p>(1) Likely threat courses of action.</p> <p>(2) Dangerous threat courses of action.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>10. The team presents intelligence. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Prepares the intelligence running estimate according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Disseminates the intelligence running estimate to the battalion S2 and adjacent units.</p> <p>c. Conducts an intelligence update briefing to the commander and key unit leaders.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step</p>		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9113	Plan for the Integration of C-IED Assets in a COIN Environment
052-703-9114	Respond to an IED at the Company Level
150-718-5315	Establish the Common Operational Picture
150-718-6717	Plan for Possible Improvised Explosive Device Threats
171-300-0083	Enforce Rules of Engagement (ROE)
301-192-6001	Apply Predictive Analysis to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6002	Apply Pattern Analysis Products to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6003	Prepare Request for Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance in Support of Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
34-5-0471	Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR)
34-5-0472	Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting
34-6-2039	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) in Support of Urban Operations (BDE/BN)
34-6-2040	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
34-6-2041	Produce Intelligence Products

**TASK:** Provide Intelligence Support Team Input to Targeting (34-5-0472)

(FM 2-01.3)

(FM 2-19.4)

**CONDITION:** The team is supporting a unit conducting stability operations or support operations in an operational environment. The team is tasked to support to company efforts in the battalion targeting process. The company's area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AOI) are established. Command and Control (C2) Information Systems (INFOSYS) are operational and are passing information according to tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). Communications are established with the battalion S2 and adjacent teams for coordination of intelligence information, tasking, reporting, and collaboration. Coalition forces, civilian noncombatants, governmental and nongovernmental organizations, and media organizations may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**STANDARD:** The team maintained current high-payoff target lists (HPTLs) and high-value target lists (HVTs). The team maintained updated target folders for high-value targets (HVTs) and high-value individuals (HVIs). The team provided input to company targeting priorities, pre-targeting meetings, and higher level targeting meetings.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The team maintains updated HPTLs and HVTs.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Obtains the current HPTLs and HVTs from the battalion S2 section.</li><li>b. Identifies which targets from the HPTLs and HVTs exist in the company area of operations.</li><li>c. Recommend additional high payoff and high value targets specific to the company AO.</li></ol></li><li>2. The team updates target folders for HVTs and HVIs.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Obtains current target folders from the battalion S2.</li><li>b. Updates target folder content based upon unit operations and activities.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>(1) Cover sheet information on the HVTs/HVIs.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>(a) Name.</li><li>(b) Location.</li><li>(c) Collection overview.</li><li>(d) Photos.</li><li>(e) Intelligence gaps on the HVTs/HVIs.</li></ol></li><li>(2) Physical description of the HVTs/HVIs.<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>(a) Age.</li></ol></li></ol></li></ol></li></ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Physical build.</p> <p>(c) Types of clothes worn.</p> <p>(d) Distinguishing physical features.</p> <p>(e) Height/weight.</p> <p>(f) Eye color.</p> <p>(g) Facial features.</p> <p>(h) Gait while walking.</p> <p>(i) Hair and the use of hats/headwear.</p> <p>(j) License plate numbers of all vehicles driven by HVTs/HVIs.</p> <p>(k) All vehicles used by the HVTs/HVIs.</p> <p>(l) All known aliases.</p> <p>(3) Background of the HVTs/HVIs.</p> <p>(a) Category in which the individual belongs (for example: jihadist).</p> <p>(b) Group affiliation.</p> <p>(c) Connections with government, military, or police.</p> <p>(d) Roles or functions the HVTs/HVIs provides.</p> <p>(e) The AO for the HVTs/HVIs.</p> <p>(f) Religious affiliation.</p> <p>(g) Province or region of origin.</p> <p>(h) Civilian education.</p> <p>(i) Military education.</p> <p>(j) Known disabilities.</p> <p>(k) Health status.</p> <p>(l) Travel patterns of the HVTs/HVIs.</p> <p>(m) Circumstances of any previous detentions.</p> <p>(n) Military or insurgency experience.</p> <p>(o) Expected actions, to include those if confronted.</p> <p>(4) List of actions or key events for which the HVTs/HVIs is responsible or involved.</p> <p>(5) HVTs/HVIs associates.</p> <p>(a) Photos of associates.</p> <p>(b) Associates descriptions.</p> <p>(c) Records of previous detentions.</p> <p>(d) Military or insurgency experiences.</p> <p>(e) Expected actions, to include those if confronted.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(f) Aliases of all known associates.</p> <p>(6) HVTs/HVIs family.</p> <p>(a) Photos of family members.</p> <p>(b) Family background and descriptions.</p> <p>(c) Location(s) of family members.</p> <p>(d) Connections with government, military, or police.</p> <p>(e) Records of previous detentions.</p> <p>(f) Military or insurgency experience.</p> <p>(g) Expected actions, to include those if confronted.</p> <p>(h) Aliases of all family members.</p> <p>c. Includes HVTs/HVIs in relevant pattern and link analysis products.</p> <p>3. The team provides input into determining company level target priorities.</p> <p>a. Conducts analysis of intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) collection in support of priority intelligence requirements (PIRs), specific information requirements (SIRs), and Specific orders and requests (SORs).</p> <p>(1) Includes combat information gathered from organic and nonorganic ISR assets.</p> <p>(2) Includes analysis of information from patrol debriefs.</p> <p>(3) Incorporates link and pattern analysis into target priority development.</p> <p>b. Categorize targeting priorities into logical target sets in support of operations.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The battalion or BCT targeting cell or work group may have existing targeting sets in support of operations that the companies recommend input to.</p> <p>(1) Security of U.S. forces, coalition forces, or the population.</p> <p>(2) Governance capabilities of local, regional, or national government agencies.</p> <p>(3) Essential services available to the local population.</p> <p>c. Assists in determining desired targeting effects.</p> <p>(1) Recommends measures of performance for assets allocated to each target.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(a) Outlines tasks to be performed by all subordinate elements during the targeting cycle.</p> <p>(b) Ensures that required actions are included in the target synchronization matrix.</p> <p>(2) Recommends measures of effectiveness for each target set.</p> <p>(a) Identify the desired end state or outcome of each target selected.</p> <p>(b) Recommends ISR collection to conduct combat assessment of the effectiveness of targeting.</p> <p>(c) Recommends whether the target requires follow-on lethal or nonlethal engagement.</p> <p>4. The team provides input to the unit pre-targeting meeting.</p> <p>a. Light and weather data provided by higher HQ.</p> <p>b. Terrain data in the form of maps or imagery.</p> <p>c. HVTLS with link and pattern analysis.</p> <p>d. Current intelligence requirements to include—</p> <p>(1) PIRs.</p> <p>(2) SIRs.</p> <p>(3) SORs.</p> <p>e. Threat courses of action (COA) and event template.</p> <p>f. Battalion ISR plan for the next 72 hours.</p> <p>g. Available ISR assets.</p> <p>(1) Organic unit assets.</p> <p>(2) Nonorganic assets.</p> <p>5. The team provides input to the unit targeting meeting.</p> <p>a. Light, weather, and terrain data.</p> <p>b. Current situational awareness products.</p> <p>(1) Situation template (SITE MP).</p> <p>(2) Incident overlays.</p> <p>(3) Link analysis products.</p> <p>(4) Pattern analysis products.</p> <p>c. Status off nonorganic ISR assets/capabilities requested by the company.</p> <p>d. Threat assessments.</p> <p>(1) Battle damage assessment of attacked targets during the past 12-24 hours.</p> <p>(2) Assessment of the effectiveness of non-kinetic targeting during the past 12-24 hours.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
(3) Changes to threat capabilities as a result of attacks. e. The status of— (1) Current and proposed PIRs. (2) Current and proposed SIRs. (3) Current and proposed SORs. (4) HVTs. f. Analysis of COAs for the targeting period.		

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9113	Plan for the Integration of C-IED Assets in a COIN Environment
150-718-5315	Establish the Common Operational Picture
150-718-6717	Plan for Possible Improvised Explosive Device Threats
301-192-6001	Apply Predictive Analysis to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6002	Apply Pattern Analysis Products to Support Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations
301-192-6003	Prepare Request for Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance in Support of Counter Improvised Explosive Device Operations

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
34-5-0470	Provide Situational Awareness of the Company Area of Operations
34-5-0471	Support Company Level Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs
05-3-D0019	Conduct 5 and 25 Meter Checks

## Chapter 3

# Supporting Battle/Crew Drills

This chapter provides the troop commander an example of the reconnaissance troop METL collective tasks listing with supporting battle and or crew drills. Also provided are the drill T&EOs, which can be used to train or evaluate a single task drill. Several T&EOs may be used by an observer controller as an evaluation outline or by a commander as a training outline.

## BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

3-1. The METL collective task to drill table (see Table 3-1) is an example developed by the DOTD, MCoE. This table can be used by the troop commander and unit leaders as an example to create their own unique unit METL to drill crosswalk.

3-2. The drills shown in the example matrix found in Table 3-1 are displayed using the T&EO outline format. For more information on other drills the troop may be expected to perform, see DTMS.

**Table 3-1. METL collective task to drill table**

METL Collective Task Number and Title	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>17-2-4000</b>	<b>Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG] )</i>
	<i>07-3-D9508 Establish Security at the Halt</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>17-2-4010</b>	<b>Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG] )</i>
	<i>07-3-D9503 React to Ambush (Far)</i>

Table 3-1. METL collective task to drill table (continued)

METL Collective Task Number and Title	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>17-2-4011</b>	<b>Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>17-2-4025</b>	<b>Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>17-2-9225</b>	<b>Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>17-2-0320</b>	<b>Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9503 React to Ambush (Far)
	07-3-D9502 React to Ambush (Near)
<b>07-2-1324</b>	<b>Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
	05-3-D0017 React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement
	19-4-D0105 Establish a Hasty Checkpoint
<b>19-3-2406</b>	<b>Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint</b>
	19-4-D0105 Establish a Hasty Checkpoint
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>07-2-4054</b>	<b>Secure Civilians during Operations (Platoon-Company)</b>
	05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs
<b>07-2-3036</b>	<b>Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)</b>
	07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire



Table 3-1. METL collective task to drill table (continued)

METL Collective Task Number and Title	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>07-2-5027</b>	<b>Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>
<b>07-2-9006</b>	<b>Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG] )</i>
	<i>17-3-D8004 React to Air Attack Drill</i>
<b>63-2-4546</b>	<b>Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG] )</i>
<b>03-2-9224</b>	<b>Conduct Operational Decontamination</b>
	<i>07-3-D9483 React to Nuclear Attack</i>
	<i>03-3-D0035 React to a Chemical Attack</i>
<b>08-2-0003</b>	<b>Treat Casualties</b>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>
<b>08-2-0004</b>	<b>Evacuate Casualties</b>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>

**TASK:** React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])  
(07-3-D9501)

**CONDITIONS:** Visual (dismounted/mounted). The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. Visual contact is made with the enemy. Mounted. The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. Visual contact is made with the enemy. Improvised explosive device (IED) (dismounted/mounted). The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The unit identifies and confirms an IED or one is detonated. Direct fire dismounted/mounted. The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with a direct fire weapon.

**CUE:** This drill begins when visual contact, direct fire, or an IED is identified or detonated.

**STANDARDS:** Visual (dismounted). The unit destroys the enemy with a hasty ambush or an immediate assault through the enemy position. Visual (mounted). Based on the composition of the mounted unit, the unit either suppresses and reports the enemy position and continues its mission, or suppresses the enemy position for a follow-on assault to destroy them. IED (dismounted/mounted). The unit takes immediate action by using the 5Cs procedure (confirm, clear, call, cordon, check, and control). Direct fire (dismounted/mounted). The unit immediately returns well-aimed fire and seeks cover. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

#### **1. Visual dismounted.**

a. Hasty ambush. Unit leaders take the following actions:

- (1) Determine that the unit has not been seen by the enemy.
- (2) Signal Soldiers to occupy best available firing positions.
- (3) Initiate the ambush with the most casualty-producing weapon available, immediately followed by a sustained well-aimed volume of effective fire.

(4) If the unit is prematurely detected, the Soldier(s) aware of the detection initiates the ambush.

(5) Ensure the unit destroys the enemy or forces them to withdraw.

(6) Report the contact to higher HQ.

b. Immediate assault.

- (1) The unit and the enemy simultaneously detect each other at close range.

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- (2) All soldiers who see the enemy engage and announce “contact” with a clock direction and distance to enemy, (example, “contact three o’clock, 100 meters”). Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - (3) Elements in contact immediately assault the enemy using fire and movement.
  - (4) The unit destroys the enemy or forces them to withdraw.
  - (5) The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters.
2. Visual mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. The Soldier who spots the enemy announces the contact.
  - b. The element in contact immediately suppresses the enemy.
  - c. The vehicle commander of the vehicle in contact sends contact report over the radio.
  - d. The unit maneuvers on the enemy or continues to move.
  - e. Vehicle gunners fix and suppress the enemy positions.
  - f. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.
3. IED dismounted/mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. React to a suspected or known IED prior to detonation by using the 5Cs.
  - b. Unit determines if there is a requirement for explosive ordnance disposal (EOD), while maintaining as safe a distance as possible and 360 security, Unit “confirms” the presence of an IED by using all available optics to identify any wires, antennas, detcord, or parts of exposed ordnance. Take the following actions:
    - (1) Conduct surveillance from a safe distance.
    - (2) Observe the immediate surroundings for suspicious activities.
    - (3) Requests EOD if the need is determined.
  - c. Unit “clears” all personnel from the area a safe distance to protect them from a potential second IED.
  - d. Unit “cordons” off the area, directs personnel out of the danger area, prevents all military or civilian traffic from passing and allows entry only to authorized personnel. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Direct people out of the 300-meter minimum danger area.
    - (2) Identify and clears an area for an incident control point (ICP).
    - (3) Occupy positions and continuously secure the area.
  - e. Unit “checks” the immediate area for secondary/tertiary devices around the incident control point (ICP) and cordon using the 5/25 meter checks.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

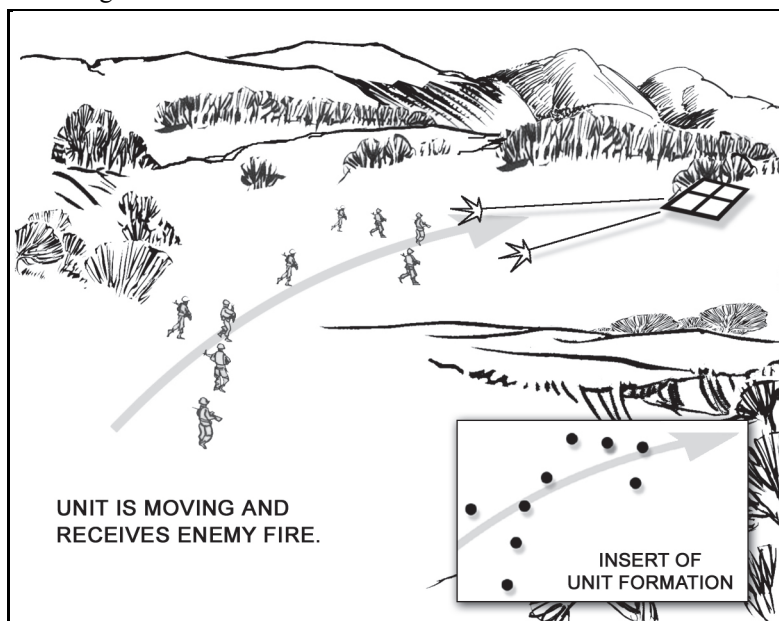
f. Unit "controls" the area inside the cordon to ensure only authorized access.

g. Unit continuously scans the area for suspicious activity. They take the following actions:

(1) Identify potential enemy observation, vantage, or ambush points.

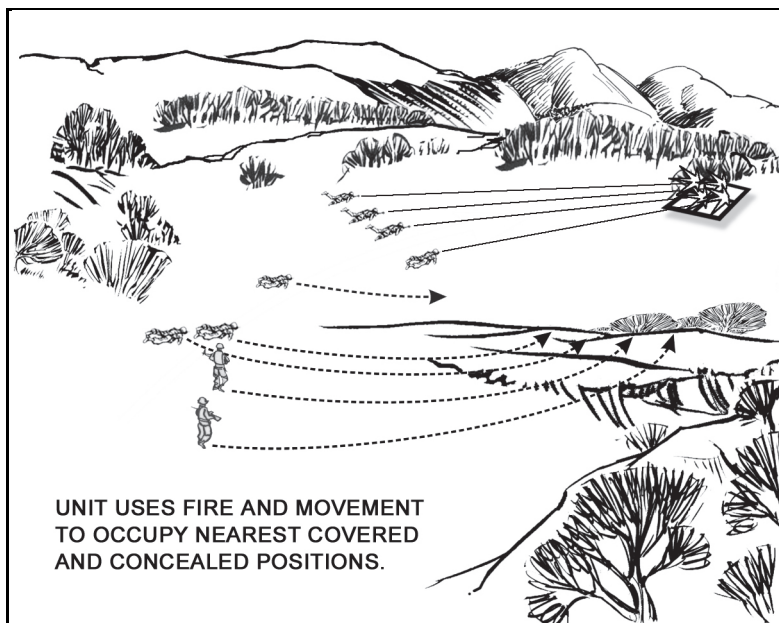
(2) Maintain visual observation on the IED to ensure the device is not tampered with.

4. Direct fire dismantled. (See Figure 1.) Unit personnel take the following actions:



**Figure 1. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)**

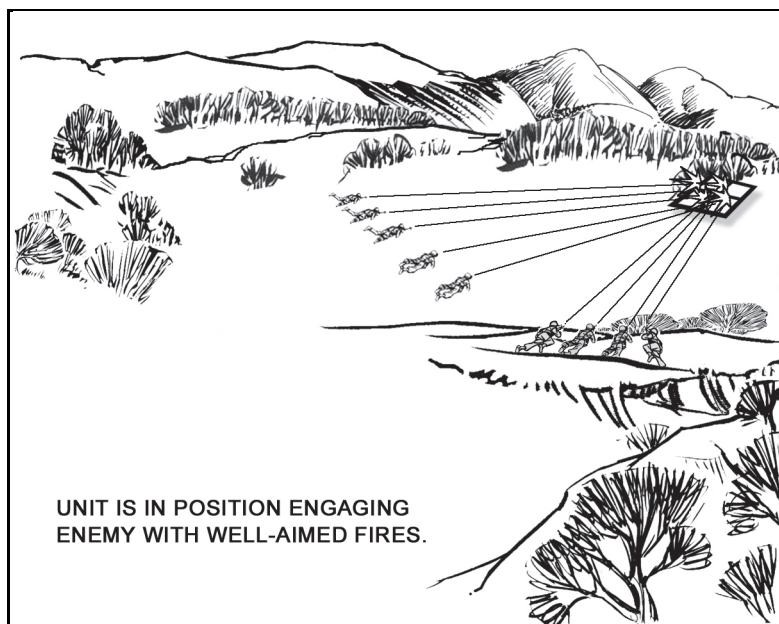
a. Soldiers under direct fire immediately return fire and seek the nearest covered positions. They call out distance and direction of direct fire. (See Figure 2.)

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**Figure 2. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)  
(continued)**

- b. Element leaders locate and engage known or suspected enemy positions with well-aimed fire and pass information to the unit leader.
- c. Element leaders control their Soldier's fire by—
  - (1) Marking targets with lasers.
  - (2) Marking the intended target with tracers or M203 rounds.
- d. Soldiers maintain contact (visually or orally) with the Soldiers on their left or right.
- e. Soldiers maintain contact with their team leader and relay the location of enemy positions. (See Figure 3.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)  
(continued)**

- f. Element leaders (visually or orally) check the status of their Soldiers.
- g. Element leaders maintain contact with the unit leader.
- h. Unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters.
- 5. Direct fire mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. If moving as part of a logistics patrol, vehicle gunners immediately suppress enemy positions and continue to move.
  - b. Vehicle commanders direct their drivers to accelerate safely through the engagement area.
  - c. If moving as part of a combat patrol, vehicle gunners suppress and fix the enemy allowing others to maneuver against and destroy the enemy.
  - d. Leaders (visually or orally) check the status of their Soldiers and vehicles.
  - e. Unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-100-0030	Carbine
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
061-283-1011	Engage Targets with Indirect Fires
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Establish Security at the Halt (07-3-D9508)

### CONDITIONS

**Dismounted/mounted.** The unit moves tactically, conducting operations. An unforeseen event causes the unit to halt. Enemy contact is possible.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the unit must halt and enemy contact is possible, or the unit leader initiates drill by giving the order, HALT.

### STANDARDS

**Dismounted.** Soldiers stop movement and clear the area per unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). (An example technique is the 5-25 meters; each Soldier immediately scans 5 meters around his position and then searches out to 25 meters based on the duration of the halt). Soldiers occupy covered and concealed positions, and maintain dispersion and all-round security.

**Mounted.** Vehicle commanders direct their vehicles into designated positions, using available cover and concealment. Soldiers dismount in the order specified and clear the area per unit SOPs. (An example technique is the 5-25 meters; each Soldier immediately scans 5 meters around his position and then searches out to 25 meters based on the duration of the halt). Platoon/section members maintain dispersion and all-round security.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. Dismounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. The unit leader gives the arm-and-hand signal to halt.
  - b. Soldiers establish local security. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Assume hasty fighting positions using available cover and concealment.
    - (2) Inspect and clear their immediate area (Example: using the 5-25 technique).
    - (3) Establish a sector of fire for their assigned weapon (Example: using 12 o'clock as the direction the Soldier is facing, the Soldier's sector of fire could be his 10 o'clock to 2 o'clock).
  - c. Element leaders adjust positions as necessary. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Inspect and clear their element area.
    - (2) Ensure Soldiers sector of fire overlap.
    - (3) Coordinate sectors with the elements on their left and right.
  - d. Unit leaders report the situation to higher headquarters (HQ).
2. Mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:



### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

a. Unit leaders give the order over the radio to stop movement and establish security. (See Figure 1.)

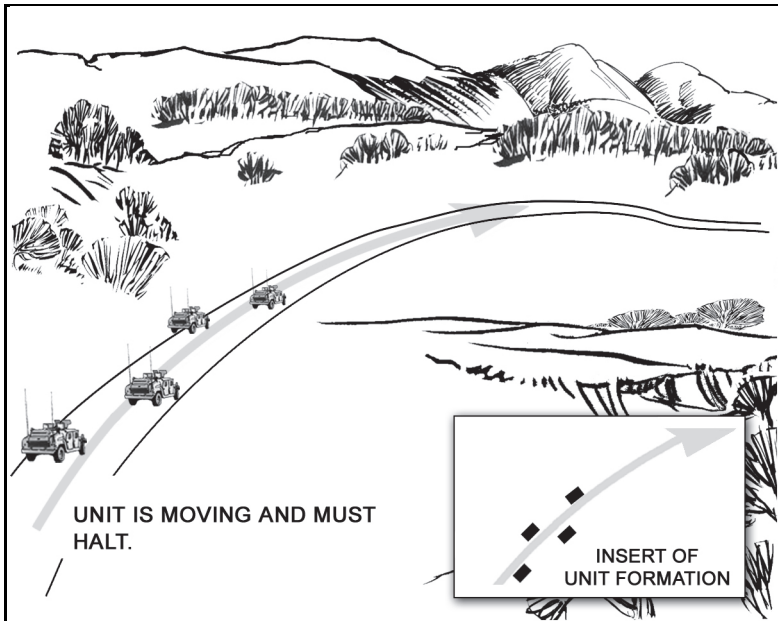
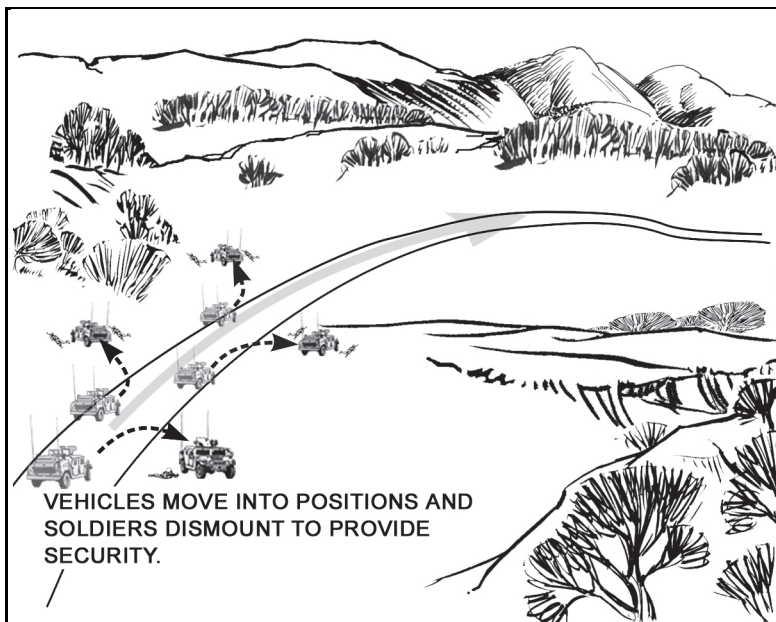


Figure 1. Establish security at the halt

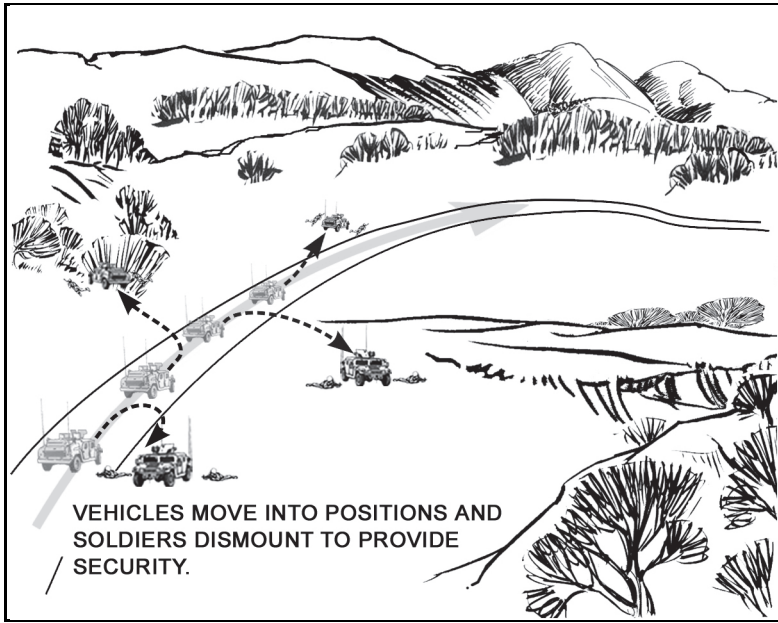
### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

b. The unit halts in the herringbone or coil formation according to the unit SOPs. (See Figures 2 and 3.)



**Figure 2. Establish security at the halt (mounted)  
(herringbone)**

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. Establish security at the halt (mounted) (coil)**

c. Each vehicle commander ensures his vehicle is correctly positioned, using cover and concealment, and the crew served weapon is manned and scanning.

d. Vehicle commanders order Soldiers to dismount to provide local security.

e. Soldiers dismount and establish local security. They take the following actions:

(1) Move to a covered and concealed position as designated by the leader.

(2) Inspect and clear their immediate area (example: using the 5-25 technique).

(3) Establish a sector of fire for their assigned weapons.

f. Dismount element leaders adjust positions as necessary.

g. Unit leaders report the situation to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	The SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
551-88M-0005	Operate a Vehicle in a Convoy
071-326-0513	Select Temporary Fighting Positions
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
071-331-0801	Challenge Persons Entering Your Area
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
071-331-1004	Perform Duty as a Guard
191-376-4114	Control Entry to and Exit From a Restricted Area
191-376-5140	Search a Vehicle for Explosive Devices or Prohibited Items at an Installation Access Control Point
191-376-5151	Control Access to a Military Installation
551-001-1040	Perform 5/25-Meter Scans
551-001-1041	Establish Security While Mounted (if applicable)
551-001-1042	Dismount a Vehicle
551-001-1043	React to Vehicle Rollover
551-88M-1658	Prepare Vehicle for Convoy Operations

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
07-2-1189	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9011	Conduct Tactical Movement in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Conduct the 5Cs (05-3-D0016)

**CONDITIONS:** The element conducts a mounted or dismounted military patrol when an improvised explosive device (IED) is identified or detonates.

**CUE:** This is done when a possible or suspected IED is identified, an explosive device is detonated, or while conducting a security halt (mounted or dismounted).

**STANDARDS:** The element conducts the 5Cs (confirm, clear, cordon, check, control) correctly, ensuring the area is clear of any nonessential personnel, secondary or tertiary IEDs have been confirmed and identified, a cordon has been established, and personnel access to the area is under control.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

**NOTE:** Conduct the 5Cs; these are not order specific and can be done concurrently.

1. Confirms there is a requirement for explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) when encountering a suspected or known IED.
2. Clears all personnel from the area to a tactically safe position and distance from the potential IED.
3. Cordons the area.
4. Checks the immediate area for secondary/tertiary devices around the incident control point (ICP) and cordon using the 5/25 meter checks.
5. Controls the area inside the cordon to ensure only authorized access.

**DANGER**  
**MINIMUM SAFE DISTANCE FOR EXPOSED**  
**PERSONNEL IN THE OPEN IS 300 METERS.**

### SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

Product ID	Product Name
<u>FM 3-21.75</u>	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

### SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation

**SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** React to Ambush (Far) (07-3-D9503)**CONDITIONS:**

**Dismounted/mounted.** The platoon/squad/section moves tactically, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with direct and indirect fire.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the enemy initiates ambush with direct and indirect fire.

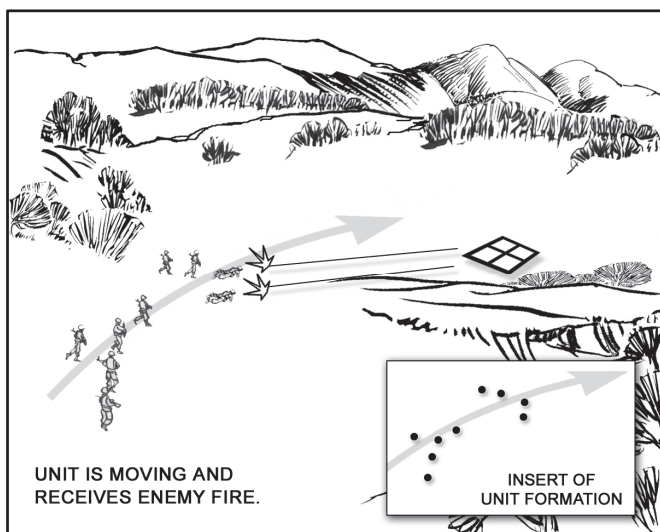
**STANDARDS:**

**Dismounted.** The unit immediately returns fire and occupies covered and/or concealed positions. The unit moves out of the kill zone, locates the enemy position, and conducts fire and maneuver to destroy the enemy.

**Mounted.** Vehicle gunners immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions as the unit continues to move out of the kill zone. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. **Dismounted.** (See Figure 1.) Unit personnel take the following actions:

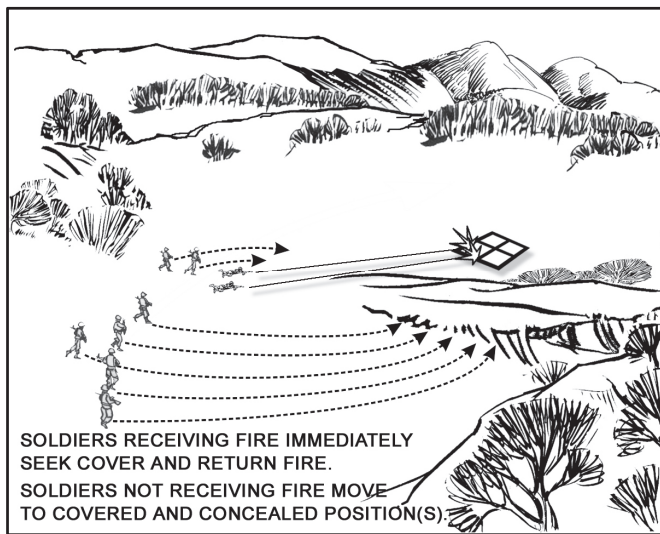


**Figure 1. React to ambush (far) (dismounted)**

- a. Soldiers receiving fire immediately return fire, seek cover, establish a support by fire, and suppress the enemy position(s).

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

- b. Soldiers not receiving fire move along a covered and concealed route to the enemies flank to assault the enemy position. (See Figure 2.)

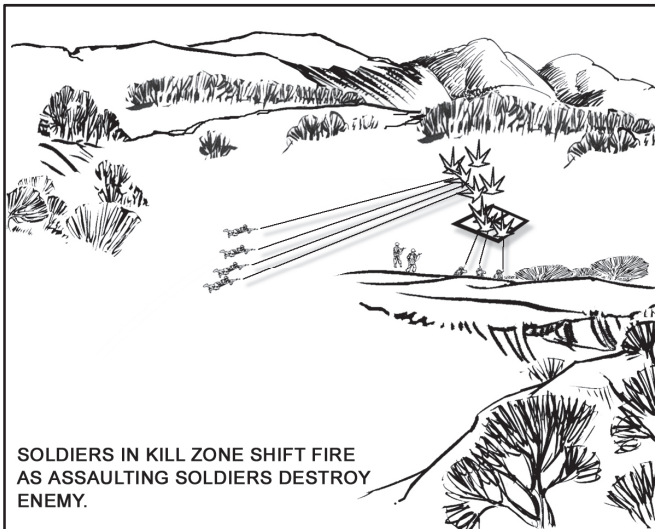


**Figure 2. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) (continued)**

- c. Unit leaders or forward observers call for and adjust indirect fires and close air support, if available. On order, the unit leaders or forward observers lift or shift fires to isolate the enemy position or to attack them with indirect fires as they retreat.
- d. Soldiers in the kill zone shift suppressive fires as the assaulting Soldiers fight through and destroy the enemy. (See Figure 3.)



## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) (continued)**

- e. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.
2. **Mounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Gunners and personnel on vehicles immediately return fire.
  - b. If the roadway is clear, they move all vehicles through the kill zone.
  - c. Soldiers on the lead vehicle deploy vehicle smoke to obscure the enemy's view of the kill zone.
  - d. The vehicle commander, in disabled vehicles, orders Soldiers to dismount according to the variables of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available-time available and civil considerations (METT-TC) and sets up security while awaiting recovery.
  - e. The remainder of the unit follows the lead vehicle out of the kill zone while continuing to suppress the enemy.
  - f. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.

## SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

Product ID	Product Name
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
071-326-5606	Select an Over-watch Position
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted
071-100-0003	Engage Targets with an M4 or M4A1 Carbine
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-313-3454	Engage Targets with a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1189	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
19-2-2004	Perform Convoy Security

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-3-D9504)

**CONDITIONS:**

**Dismounted.** The unit moves, conducting operations. Any Soldier gives the alert, INCOMING, or a round impacts nearby.

**Mounted.** The platoon/section is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The alert, INCOMING, comes over the radio or intercom or rounds impact nearby.

**CUE:** This drill begins when any member alerts, INCOMING, or a round impacts.

**STANDARDS:**

**Dismounted.** Soldiers immediately seek the best available cover. The unit moves out of area to the designated rally point after the impacts.

**Mounted.** When moving, drivers immediately move their vehicles out of the impact area in the direction and distance ordered. If stationary, drivers start their vehicles and move in the direction and distance ordered. Unit leaders report the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. **Dismounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any Soldier announces, INCOMING!
  - b. Soldiers immediately assume the prone position or move to immediate available cover during initial impacts.
  - c. The unit leader orders the unit to move to a rally point by giving a direction and distance.
  - d. After the impacts, Soldiers move rapidly in the direction and distance to the designated rally point.
  - e. The unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.
2. **Mounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any Soldier announces, INCOMING!
  - b. Vehicle commanders repeat the alert over the radio.
  - c. The leaders give the direction and link-up location over the radio.
  - d. Soldiers close all hatches if applicable to the vehicle type; gunners stay below turret shields or get down into vehicle.
  - e. Drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.
  - f. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

Product ID	Product Name
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9004	Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** React to Ambush (Near) (07-3-D9502)

**CONDITIONS:** (Dismounted/Mounted) - The unit is moving tactically, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with direct fire within hand grenade range. All or part of the unit is receiving accurate enemy direct fire.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the enemy initiates ambush within hand grenade range.

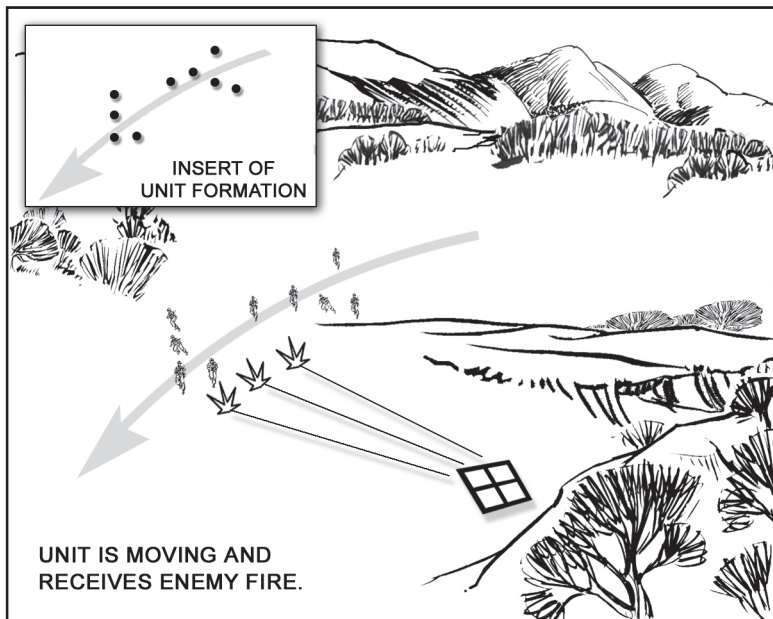
**STANDARDS**

**Dismounted.** Soldiers in the kill zone immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions and assault through the kill zone. Soldiers not in the kill zone locate and place “well-aimed” suppressive fire on the enemy. The unit assaults through the kill zone and destroys the enemy.

**Mounted.** Vehicle gunners immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions as the unit continues to move out of the kill zone. Soldiers on disabled vehicles in the kill zone dismount, occupy covered positions and engage the enemy with accurate fire. Vehicle gunners and Soldiers outside the kill zone suppress the enemy. The unit assaults through the kill zone and destroys the enemy. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

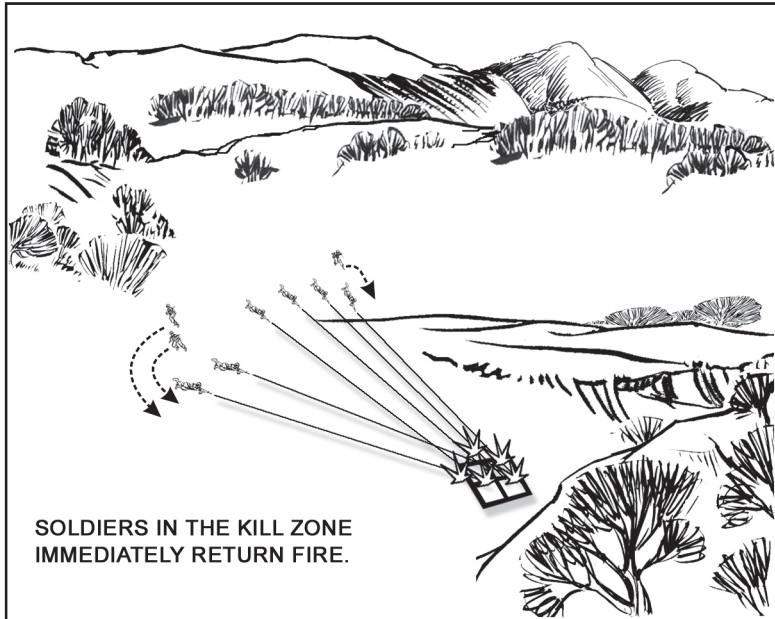
1. **Dismounted** - (See Figure 1.); takes the following actions:



**Figure 1. React to ambush (near) (dismounted)**

- a. Soldiers in the kill zone execute one of the following two actions:
- (1) Return fire immediately. If cover is not available, immediately, without order or signal, assault through the kill zone.
  - (2) Return fire immediately. If cover is available, without order or signal, occupy the nearest covered position, and throw smoke grenades. (See Figure 2.)

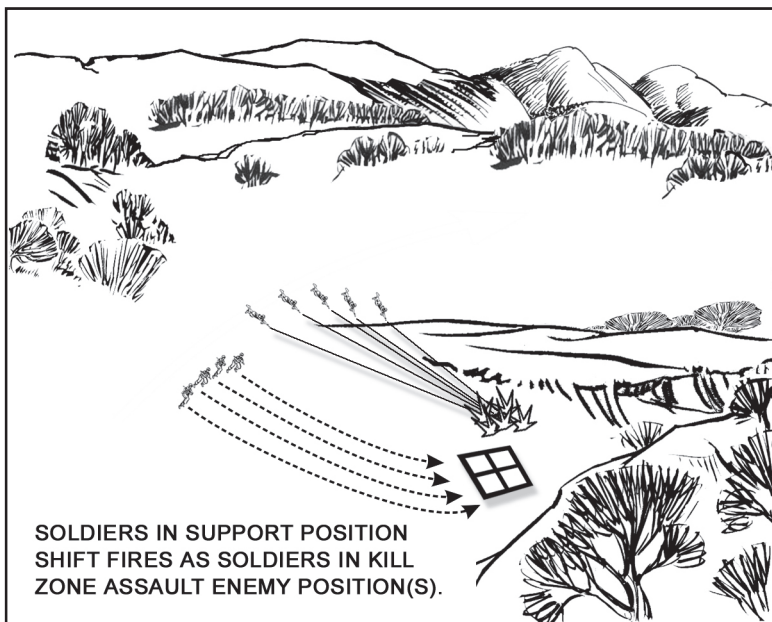
## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 2. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) (continued)**

- b. Soldiers in the kill zone assault through the ambush using fire and movement.
- c. Soldiers not in the kill zone identify the enemy location, place "well-aimed" suppressive fire on the enemy's position and shift fire as Soldiers assault the objective.
- d. Soldiers assault through and destroy the enemy position. (See Figure 3.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) (continued)**

e. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.

**2. Mounted.**

a. Vehicle gunners in the kill zone immediately return fire and deploy vehicle smoke, while moving out of the kill zone.

b. Soldiers in disabled vehicles in the kill zone immediately obscure themselves from the enemy with smoke, dismount if possible, seek covered positions, and return fire.

c. Vehicle gunners and Soldiers outside of the kill zone identify the enemy positions, place "well-aimed" suppressive fire on the enemy, and shift fire as Soldiers assault the objective.

d. The unit leader calls for and adjusts indirect fire and request Close Air Support according to METT-TC.

e. Soldiers in the kill zone assault through the ambush and destroy the enemy.

f. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.



**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.75</u>	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
FM 3-21.8	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASK**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-000-0006	React to Man-to-Man Contact
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-705-0007	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine using an M68 Reflex Sight (Close Combat Optic)
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5606	Select an Overwatch Position
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)
	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the
081-831-1003	Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
071-326-0510	React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1189	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	

**TASK:** React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement  
(05-3-D0017)

**CONDITIONS:** The element conducts a mounted military operation when an improvised explosive device (IED) detonates.

**CUE:** An IED detonates within casualty-producing radius on the patrol, resulting in varying degrees of battle damage to the vehicles, equipment, and personnel.

**STANDARDS:** React to the IED attack by performing 5/25 meter checks. They use the 5Cs (confirm, clear, cordon, check, and control) to suppress enemy fire, set up security, evacuate casualties, recover disabled vehicles, submit an explosive hazards spot report, and exit the area.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

Unit personnel take the following actions:

1. Report the IED attack to the patrol (any Soldier can do this using the 3Ds: distance, direction, and description).
2. Establish 360-degree local security by directing the element to focus outward from the attack site.
3. If necessary, direct the element to the rally point based upon mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.
4. Employ tactical combat casualty care measures.
5. Evacuate casualties.
6. Conduct consolidation and reorganization at the rally point.
7. Direct element members to report the status of liquid, ammunition, casualties, and equipment (LACE) report.

### SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

Product ID	Product Name
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
061-283-1011	Engage Targets with Indirect Fires
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Establish a Hasty Checkpoint (19-4-D0105)

**CONDITIONS** The element receives an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to immediately establish a hasty checkpoint (CP) at a specific location in its area of operations (AO). The local police or security forces may assist with the operations. The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and escalation of force (EOF). Translators or host-nation personnel are attached or available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4).

**CUE:** This drill begins when the element leader receives the order from higher HQ and issues the command to the element to immediately establish a hasty checkpoint (CP) at a specified location, or the element leader directs his personnel to conduct this drill.

**STANDARDS:** The element takes immediate action to construct and establish a hasty CP according to orders from higher HQ. The checkpoint controls vehicular and pedestrian traffic by limiting entry to and exit from the specified area. The element is briefed on the ROE, ROI, and EOF, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. The element leader receives and issues orders to element to immediately establish a hasty CP at a specific location. He takes the following actions:

**NOTE:** Establish a hasty CP when the CP will be used for a set period of time, usually a short duration. Hasty CPs should be located as to achieve the element of surprise and cannot be seen by approaching traffic until it is too late to withdraw. Good locations for hasty CPs are bridges, defiles, highway intersections, reverse slopes of hills, and just beyond sharp curves.

a. Issues directives and assignments to personnel to immediately set up and construct key elements of a hasty CP. The key elements are—

- (1) Establish security.
- (2) Establish security positions or occupy sentry positions.
- (3) Establish communication.
- (4) Construct an entry point.
- (5) Construct approach lanes and protective barriers.
- (6) Construct search and holding areas.
- (7) Establish lethal and non-lethal (weapons) overwatch positions.
- (8) Post warning signs.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

(9) Final operations briefing and instructions (prior to activating the CP).

b. Issues time-line for establishing the checkpoint.

2. Element members immediately perform their assigned duties to establish or construct the hasty CP to prepare it for operation (based on the element leader's instructions). They take the following actions:

**NOTE:** Security, hasty defensive positions, and establishing commo must be completed first. The remaining hasty CP construction duties and responsibilities are not required to be performed in sequence and can be completed simultaneously by various element members to speed up the process.

a. Establish security during the construction of the hasty checkpoint.

b. Construct hasty defensive positions (all members).

c. Establish communications with all elements and higher HQ.

d. Establish an initial (stand-off) visual search area or zone (only if mission dictates or allows) that is clearly marked with signs for vehicles and/or pedestrians to stop and wait for further instructions prior to approaching the actual CP entrance.

**NOTE:** The initial search zone is a distant visual search area where vehicles and personnel will be ordered (by visual or audio means) to stop at a clearly marked point before they actually enter the CP. This process may allow for the detection of weapons and explosives at a safe distance or cause a person to reveal their intent. Personnel and vehicles can be visually inspected from a predetermined distance (approximately 25 to 100 meters or as the mission dictates) while CP operators remain behind a protective barrier or vehicle. Personnel are ordered to exit their vehicle, open their vehicle compartments that can be observed from a distance (trunk, hood, etc), uncover or take out items from their vehicle, open or pull up their overgarments, turn around, and perform any other additional measures according to the SOP. This visual search is conducted prior to bringing personnel and vehicles into the checkpoint for a detailed search. Local support authorities can be utilized for this area. The initial search zone is more applicable to a deliberate CP but can be used for a hasty CP if the mission allows and threat dictates its use.

e. Construct entry points that can restrict and control the entry of vehicles and/or pedestrians into the hasty CP. Entry point should also provide minimal protection for CP personnel if needed.

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**NOTE:** Hasty CP approach lanes, entry point, protective barriers, holding areas, and search areas can be constructed utilizing readily available materials such as engineer tape, debris, trees, rocks, concertina wire, existing structures, and all other available equipment/material. The element should also use existing culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends, or dips in the road to create the hasty checkpoint. Ensure that there is adequate lighting for night operations (if applicable).

f. Create or construct approach (canalization) and deceleration lanes that force traffic to slow down, and directs vehicles and/or pedestrians to the designated areas. This can be done with a system of curves and obstacles vehicles must maneuver around as they approach the CP.

g. Establish or construct holding areas for detained persons away from checkpoint entrance.

**NOTE:** The holding and search areas are relatively secure areas where personnel and vehicles are positively identified and a complete detailed search is conducted. Existing structures, vehicles or obstacles are used to isolate vehicles or individuals from others with overwatch protection from weapon positions. Mission may require male and female members to conduct personnel searches (female soldiers should conduct searches of female personnel entering the CP).

h. Establish or construct detailed search areas for personnel (male and female) and vehicles.

i. Establish lethal and nonlethal overwatch positions where they can observe all areas and approach areas. Crew served weapons will be strategically placed at these locations.

j. Ensure warning signs are posted.

**NOTE:** Warning or instructional signs should be posted in the native and English languages in the CP area. Signs should be placed at key locations and distances leading up to CP. Signs should also specify when deadly force is authorized for failure to comply with posted warnings (based on the current SOPs, orders, ROE, and EOF).

3. The element leader conducts final briefing, after hasty CP is established, and makes notification to HQ. He takes the following actions:

a. Briefs personnel on key elements of conducting hasty CP operations (prior to putting the CP into operation). The key elements are—

(1) Current ROE, EOF, and ROI.

(2) Rules regarding search, detention, standoff distances, and the use of force.

(3) Actions on contact (mounted and dismounted threats).

(4) Procedures for clearing and processing personnel and vehicles through the CP according to orders and guidance from higher HQ.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

(5) Utilizing all available assets and procedures the mission allows to conduct CP operations safely (stand-off distance, obstacles, barriers, and warning signs).

(6) Searching for high risk and prohibited items (such as weapons, explosives, and contraband).

(7) Maintaining security and overwatch support of CP.

(8) Ensuring vehicle traffic, movement, and personnel are handled according to current directives and SOPs.

b. Notifies higher HQ that the hasty CP is established and ready for operations.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.75</u>	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

**SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted) (07-3-D9507)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. A Soldier has been injured and must be evacuated. All enemy in the area have been suppressed, neutralized, or destroyed, and local security is established. Some iterations of this drill should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** This drill begins when a unit member is injured and must be evacuated or the leader directs his personnel to conduct the drill.

**STANDARD:** Element members conduct first aid and evacuate the casualties without dropping or causing further injury to the casualties. If necessary, the unit leader, combat medic, or any Soldier requests medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) and reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. Element members conduct first aid and evacuate the casualties without dropping or causing further injury to the casualties.
2. Drill is conducted while dismounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any unit member provides initial first aid (self-aid/buddy aid).
  - b. Any unit combat lifesaver provides enhanced first aid or combat medic provides emergency medical treatment if necessary.
  - c. The unit leader, combat medic, or any Soldier requests MEDEVAC using the 9-Line MEDEVAC request if necessary.
  - d. The unit aid and litter team or designated members evacuate casualties to the casualty collection point (CCP) or patient collecting point (PCP) and request MEDEVAC. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Remove key operational items and equipment (maps, simple key loader [SKL]/automated network control devices [ANCD], position-locating devices, laser pointers, and other sensitive items).
    - (2) Account for the weapons and ammunition of casualties according to the unit standing operation procedures (SOPs).
    - (3) Complete DD Form 1380, *U.S. Field Medical Card*, and unit leaders or any member complete Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156, *Casualty Feeder Card*.
    - (4) Evacuate casualty to the CCP, PCP, or aid station using litters, one or two man carry, or by having casualties with minor wounds walk.
3. Drill is conducted while mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Crew/occupants provide initial first aid (self-aid/buddy aid).



## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

b. Any unit combat lifesaver, combat medic, or designated Soldier moves to the vehicle to provide first aid or enhanced first aid (self-aid, buddy aid, and combat lifesaver) and emergency medical treatment (EMT) (combat medic) and then evacuates the casualty.

c. Designated Soldiers remove the casualty from the vehicle so as not to cause further injury. They take the following actions:

(1) Remove all key operational items and equipment (maps, simple key loader [SKL]/automated network control devices [ANCD], position-locating devices, and all other sensitive items).

(2) Account for the weapons and ammunition of casualties according to unit SOPs.

(3) Complete DD Form 1380, and DA Form 1156.

(4) Evacuate casualties to the CCP or PCP and request MEDEVAC (9-line MEDEVAC request) or evacuate directly to the aid station using available vehicle assets.

4. Unit leaders report the contact and casualties according to unit SOPs to higher HQ.

## SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

Product ID	Product Name
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

## SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** React to Air Attack Drill (17-3-D8004)

**CONDITIONS:** While operating in a tactical environment, the platoon or section identifies threat aircraft, requiring it to take either passive or active air defense measures. The platoon is digitally connected (if equipped) with higher headquarters (HQ) via Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective procedures 4 (MOPP4).

**CUE:** Any Soldier gives an oral or visual signal for a chemical attack or when a chemical alarm activates.

**STANDARDS:** The platoon or section executes appropriate air defense measures and prevents the aircraft from effectively engaging and/or observing the platoon/section. The platoon reports to higher HQ. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. The vehicle or individual who identifies threat aircraft alerts the platoon with a contact report containing these elements:
  - a. Contact.
  - b. Bandit(s).
  - c. Cardinal direction (specify: north, south, east, or west).
2. Platoon/section leaders analyze situation to determine whether the platoon is in the direct path of and/or is the target of the threat aircraft. They take the following actions:
  - a. Order passive air defense measures when the platoon/section is not in the path of or target of the threat aircraft.OR
  - b. Order active air defense measures when the platoon is in the path of or target of the threat aircraft.
3. Platoons or sections execute passive air defense measures as necessary. They take the following actions:
  - a. On order of platoon/section leaders, move to covered and concealed positions, maintaining a minimum of 100 meters between vehicles and halts.
  - b. Prepare to engage on order of platoon/section leader.
  - c. Scan for follow-on aircraft.

**NOTE:** Higher HQ may order the platoon or section to continue movement.

4. Platoons execute active air defense measures as necessary. They take the following actions:
  - a. If in the direct path of flight, move away from the path of flight as fast as possible, moving at a 45-degree angle toward the attacking aircraft.

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- b. Maintain at least 100-meter intervals and avoid creating a linear target for the attacking aircraft.
  - c. Orient on the aim point designated by the platoon/section leader and engage the aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire using the proper lead technique for the type of aircraft and direction of movement.
  - d. Move quickly to covered and concealed positions and halts.
  - e. Remain in covered and concealed positions, as required.
  - f. Scan for follow-on aircraft.
5. Platoon leaders/platoon sergeants (PSGs) report situation to higher HQ as necessary. They send—
- a. Spot report (SPOTREP).
  - b. (D) Updated situation reports (SITREP), as necessary.

**NOTE:** Task steps and performance measures prefaced with a (D) may be performed digitally according to the order and/or unit SOPs. When preformatted messages do not exist or are not appropriate, free text messages may be substituted for FBCB2 messages identified in task steps.

### **SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-20.98</u>	Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
FM 3-20.971	Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop
ATP 3-20.15	Tank Platoon

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4017	Supervise Tank Platoon Formations and Drills
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-121-4057	Perform Techniques of Movement

### **SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9001	Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9003	Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)
17-5-5585	Engage Multiple Machine Gun Targets on a M1-Series Tank
17-5-5590	Conduct Main Gun Misfire Procedures on a M1-Series Tank

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
17-5-5622	Engage Targets with the Main Gun from a M1-Series Tank
17-5-8006	React to an Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)

### **TASK:** React to Nuclear Attack (07-3-D9483)

**CONDITIONS:** The current enemy situation outlines a threat of tactical nuclear capabilities. With little-to-no warning, the squad/platoon encounters a brilliant flash of light while conducting tactical operations. Some portion of the unit moves in the assigned area while others are dismounted, either stationary or moving at the time of the attack.

**CUE:** The drill begins when any member sees a brilliant flash of light or a leader directs his personnel to conduct the drill.

**STANDARDS:** Dismounted personnel immediately drop to prone positions and take the individual steps necessary to survive the blast. Mounted personnel immediately drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast. After the blast wave, they establish security.

#### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. All personnel react to an unwarranted nuclear attack. They take the following actions:

a. **Dismounted** personnel immediately—

- (1) Drop to a prone position and close eyes.
- (2) Turn bodies head-on toward the blast.
- (3) Place thumbs in ears.
- (4) Cover faces with hands.
- (5) Place arms under bodies.
- (6) Tuck heads into shoulders; keeping helmets on and faces

down.

- (7) Stay down until the blast wave passes and debris stops

falling.

- (8) Check for casualties and damaged equipment.

b. **Mounted** personnel immediately—

- (1) Drop down inside of vehicles.
- (2) Before the blast wave, close hatches.
- (3) Turn off unneeded radios.
- (4) Brace themselves.

2. After the blast wave has passed, personnel give first aid to and evacuate casualties.

3. The platoon/squad leader takes the following actions:

a. Reestablishes the chain of command and communications.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- b. Submits an initial chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) 1 report.
- c. Accounts for all Soldiers.
- d. Provides a situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ.
- e. Reorganizes as needed.
- f. Continues the mission.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1018	React to Nuclear Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area

**SUPPORTING TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination

**TASK:** React to a Chemical Attack (03-3-D0035)

**CONDITIONS (CUE):** The element moves or is stationary, conducting operations. The unit is attacked with a chemical agent. Soldiers hear a chemical alarm, observe an unknown gas or liquid, or are ordered to don their protective mask.

**CUE:** (Any Soldier gives an oral or visual signal for a chemical attack or when a chemical alarm activates.)

**STANDARDS:** All soldiers don their protective mask within 9 seconds or 15 seconds for masks with a hood. Soldiers assume mission-oriented protection posture 4 (MOPP 4) within 8 minutes. The element identifies the chemical agent using M8 chemical detector paper and the M256 detector kit. The squad/platoon leader reports that the unit is under a chemical attack and submits chemical, biological, nuclear, radiological, and high-yield explosive (CBRNE) 1 reports to next higher echelon.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. Soldiers don their protective mask.

**NOTE:** If Soldiers are using Joint-Service, Lightweight, Integrated, Suit Technology (JSLIST), the hood is not on the mask. Soldiers are only allotted nine seconds to don their protective mask.

**NOTE:** The mask gives immediate protection against traditional warfare agents. The mask may not completely protect the Soldier from certain toxic industrial chemicals, but it provides the best available protection to enable him to evacuate the hazard area. He may be required to evacuate to a minimum safe distance of at least 300 meters upwind from the contamination (if possible) or as directed by the commander.

2. Soldiers give vocal or nonvocal alarm.
3. Within 60 seconds, Soldiers use the appropriate skin decontamination kit (SDK) for individual decontamination, as necessary.
4. Soldiers assume MOPP 4 within eight minutes.
5. Soldiers initiate self- or buddy-aid, as needed.
6. The element identifies the chemical agent using M8 chemical detector paper and the M256 detector kit.
7. The element leader reports the chemical attack to higher headquarters using the CBRNE 1 report.
8. Leaders determine if decontamination is required and requests support, if necessary.
9. The element initiates immediate decontamination within 15 minutes (if necessary).
10. If contamination is present, the squad/platoon marks the area before leaving.



**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

11. The element moves and displaces, as appropriate, or continues its mission.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-11</u>	Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operation
FM 3-11.4	Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1005	Submit and NBC 1 Report
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor
031-503-1042	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
031-503-1042	Protect Yourself From CBRN Injury/Contamination When Changing MOPP (Using JSLIST)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Appendix A

# Troop Unit Task List

The UTL shown in Table A-1 identifies collective tasks that the unit is organized, manned, and equipped to conduct according to their TOE. The list has been assembled to assist the commander in developing the supporting collective task list, documenting which tasks to train in order to support the squadron METL. The commander may accept risk and not train the entire UTL.

**Table A-1. Reconnaissance troop unit task list (UTL)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Title</b>
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
34-3-0003	Maintain Operations Security
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post (Platoon/Squad)
17-2-0320	Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company)
07-5-1001	Conduct Surveillance (LRS Team)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9007	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9008	Conduct a Raid (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9014	Occupy an Assembly Area (Platoon-Company)
07-5-1111	Establish Surveillance Site (LRS)

**Table A-1. Reconnaissance troop unit task list (UTL) (continued)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Title</b>
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)
07-3-9020	Establish a Patrol Base (Platoon-Squad)
07-3-9022	Conduct a Security Patrol (Platoon-Squad)
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration
17-1-6030	Conduct Resupply
17-2-2633	Secure A Basecamp (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-5-5969	Engage Multiple Machine Gun Targets From a Vehicle
17-2-2625	Displace To Subsequent Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9400	Conduct Site Exploitation (Platoon-Company)
17-3-3809	Conduct Battle Handover
17-5-5000	Fuel A Tactical Vehicle
17-5-5963	Start A High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV) Using Slave Cables
43-2-0001	Perform Vehicle Recovery
43-2-4564	Conduct Unit-Level Maintenance Operations
55-2-4003	Conduct Tactical Convoy
55-2-4806	Prepare Equipment for Deployment
55-2-4807	Prepare Unit for Nontactical Convoy (Deployment/Redeployment)
55-2-4808	Conduct Nontactical Convoy (Deployment/Redeployment)
55-2-4809	Conduct Rail Unload Operations
63-2-4811	Perform Aerial Port of Debarkation Activities for Deployment
63-2-4008	Perform Quartering Party Activities
63-2-4016	Employ Operations Security Measures
63-2-4806	Prepare Equipment for Deployment
63-2-4809	Perform Sea Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment
63-2-4810	Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Deployment
63-2-4818	Prepare Equipment for Redeployment
63-2-4820	Perform Aerial Port of Embarkation Activities for Redeployment
63-2-4829	Conduct Unit Redeployment
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
19-3-1301	Conduct Dislocated Civilian (DC) Control
03-2-9201	Implement CBRN Protective Measures

**Table A-1. Reconnaissance troop unit task list (UTL) (continued)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Title</b>
03-2-9203	React to a Chemical or Biological (CB) Attack
05-2-3092	Prepare for a Suspected Vehicle-Borne Improvised Explosive Device (VBIED)/Person-Borne IED (PBIED) Attack (Unclassified)
05-1-1006	Plan for Counter-IED (C-IED) Operations (Unclassified/For Official Use Only)
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/For Official Use Only)
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
08-2-0313	Provide Emergency Medical Treatment-Medical Units
03-2-9208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
11-6-8005	Establish a Combat Network Radio Voice/Data Network
19-2-3503	Supervise Escort of Detainees, United States (US) Military Prisoners, and Dislocated Civilians
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint
03-2-9223	React to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack
06-5-5050	Conduct Fire Missions (Fire Support Team)
11-1-6780	Plan War Fighter Information Network
11-4-8140	Establish the LandWarNet (LWN) (S6)
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
06-1-1055	Conduct Rehearsals (CO/TRP FIST)
06-5-5047	Coordinate, Direct, and Adjust Other Fire Support Assets
06-5-5080	Plan Fires in Support of Maneuver Operations

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Appendix B

# Reconnaissance Troop Higher Headquarters' METL

Table B-1 is an example of the reconnaissance troop's next higher HQ (that of a reconnaissance squadron within the heavy, Infantry, Stryker BCTs and BFSB organizations) METL. For more information regarding METL, refer to DTMS or ATN.

**Table B-1. Example of a reconnaissance squadron's METL**

<b>HQ, Reconnaissance Squadron</b>	<b>MET (ART)</b>
	<b>TG (T&amp;EO)</b>
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
<b>ART 2.3.3</b>	<b>Conduct Reconnaissance</b>
<b>17-6-9514</b>	<b>TG: Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Battalion-Brigade)</b>
17-6-9315	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Battalion-Brigade)
17-1-4025	Conduct a Reconnaissance Handover
17-6-9320	Reconnaissance in Force (Battalion-Brigade)
17-6-3004	Employ Fires and Effects (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1107	Conduct a Relief in Place (Battalion-Brigade)
17-6-1007	Conduct Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) Synchronization and Integration (Battalion-Brigade)
71-8-2321	Develop the Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Plan (Brigade-Corps)
07-6-5037	Conduct Consolidation (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-5082	Conduct Reorganization (Battalion-Brigade)
63-1-4032	Coordinate LOGPAC Operations
71-8-5111	Conduct the Military Decisionmaking Process (Battalion Corps)

**Table B-1. Example of a reconnaissance squadron's METL  
(continued)**

<b>HQ, Reconnaissance Squadron</b>	<b>MET (ART)</b>
	<b>TG (T&amp;EO)</b>
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
71-8-5131	Execute Tactical Operations (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5142	Evaluate Situation or Operation (Battalion-Corps)
<b>ART 6.7.3</b>	<b>Conduct Security Operations</b>
<b>17-6-9225</b>	<b>TG: Conduct a Screen (Battalion-Brigade)</b>
17-6-3004	Employ Fires and Effects (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1107	Conduct a Relief in Place (Battalion-Brigade)
17-6-1007	Conduct Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) Synchronization and Integration (Battalion-Brigade)
71-8-2321	Develop the Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Plan (Brigade-Corps)
07-6-5037	Conduct Consolidation (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-5082	Conduct Reorganization (Battalion-Brigade)
63-1-4032	Coordinate LOGPAC Operations
71-8-5111	Conduct the Military Decisionmaking Process (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5131	Execute Tactical Operations (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5142	Evaluate Situation or Operation (Battalion-Corps)
<b>07-6-1272</b>	<b>TG: Conduct Area Security (Battalion-Brigade)</b>
17-6-9406	Conduct Lines of Communication Security (Battalion-Brigade)
19-1-2007	Coordinate Convoy Security Operations
17-6-3004	Employ Fires and Effects (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-1107	Conduct a Relief in Place (Battalion-Brigade)
17-6-1007	Conduct Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) Synchronization and Integration (Battalion-Brigade)



**Table B-1. Example of a reconnaissance squadron's METL  
(continued)**

<b>HQ, Reconnaissance Squadron</b>	<b>MET (ART)</b>
	<b>TG (T&amp;EO)</b>
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
71-8-2321	Develop the Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Plan (Brigade-Corps)
07-6-5037	Conduct Consolidation (Battalion-Brigade)
07-6-5082	Conduct Reorganization (Battalion-Brigade)
63-1-4032	Coordinate LOGPAC Operations
71-8-5111	Conduct the Military Decisionmaking Process (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5131	Execute Tactical Operations (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5142	Evaluate Situation or Operation (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5334	Plan Public Affairs Operations (Battalion-Corps)
07-6-6073	Secure Civilians During Operations (Battalion-Brigade)
<b>ART 7.3</b>	<b><i>Conduct Stability Operations</i></b>
<b>07-6-4000</b>	<b><i>TG: Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Battalion-Brigade)</i></b>
17-6-9406	Conduct Lines of Communication Security (Battalion-Brigade)
19-1-2007	Coordinate Convoy Security Operations
07-6-1272	Conduct Area Security (Battalion-Brigade)
63-1-4032	Coordinate LOGPAC Operations
71-8-5111	Conduct the Military Decisionmaking Process (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5131	Execute Tactical Operations (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5142	Evaluate Situation or Operation (Battalion-Corps)
71-8-5334	Plan Public Affairs Operations (Battalion-Corps)
07-6-6073	Secure Civilians During Operations (Battalion-Brigade)

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **Appendix C**

### **CATS Task Selection to METL Matrix**

A CATS task selection to the troop's METL matrix is an example containing the existing CATS task selections specific to the reconnaissance troop. Table C-1 is an example of specific CATS task selections that support the reconnaissance troop METs and task groups within a reconnaissance squadron of the BCTs or reconnaissance and surveillance brigade.

The contents of the following table have been assembled from existing CATSs relating to the reconnaissance troop and is not complete. For more information regarding task selections relating to the reconnaissance troop refer to the CATSs found at ATN and DTMS.

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>	<i>Stability</i>	
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
07-TS-5529	Employ Unmanned Aircraft Systems	X	X			X	X	X	
17-RC-2009	Conduct Deployment-Troop				X	X	X	X	X
17-RC-2010	Conduct Basic Tactical Tasks-Troop				X	X	X	X	
17-TS-2100	Conduct Reconnaissance Troop Operations	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-2101	Conduct Troop Route Reconnaissance	X	X	X		X			
17-TS-2102	Conduct Troop Area Reconnaissance	X	X	X		X			

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>	<i>Stability</i>	
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-2103	Conduct Troop Zone Reconnaissance	X	X	X		X			
17-TS-2104	Conduct Troop Screen	X	X	X			X		
17-TS-2105	Conduct Troop Area Security/Stability Operations	X	X	X				X	X
17-TS-2106	Perform Basic Tactical Tasks-Troop/Company	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-2107	Conduct Deployment	X	X	X					

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>	<i>Stability</i>	
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-2300	Tactical Leaders Training-Troop/Company/Platoon (Tactical Leaders Course)	X							
17-TS-2400	Conduct Troop Operations-Troop				X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-2401	Conduct Route Reconnaissance-Troop				X	X			
17-TS-2402	Conduct Area Reconnaissance-Troop				X	X			
17-TS-2403	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance-Troop				X	X			
17-TS-2404	Conduct a Screen-Troop				X		X		

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>	<i>Stability</i>	
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-2405	Conduct Area Security/Stability Operations-Troop				X			X	X
17-TS-3100	Perform Reconnaissance Platoon Operations	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-3101	Perform Platoon Security Operations		X				X	X	
17-TS-3101	Conduct Platoon Route Reconnaissance	X		X		X			
17-TS-3102	Reconnoiter a Route-Platoon		X			X			
17-TS-3102	Conduct Platoon Area Reconnaissance	X		X		X			

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>		<i>Stability</i>
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-3103	Reconnoiter an Area-Platoon		X			X			
17-TS-3103	Conduct Platoon Zone Reconnaissance	X		X		X			
17-TS-3104	Reconnoiter a Zone-Platoon		X			X			
17-TS-3104	Conduct Platoon Screen	X		X			X		
17-TS-3105	Conduct Scout/Recce Platoon Sustainment Operations		X			X	X	X	X
17-TS-3105	Conduct Platoon Area Security/Stability Operations	X		X				X	X



**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>	<i>Stability</i>	
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-3106	Perform Basic Tactical Tasks-Platoon	X	X	X		V	X	X	X
17-TS-3122	Protect the Force-Reconnaissance Troop	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-3210	Employ Mortars	X	X	X		X	X	X	
17-TS-3131	Protect the Force-Troop				X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-3400	Conduct Reconnaissance Platoon Operations-Platoon				X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-3401	Conduct Route Reconnaissance-Platoon				X	X			

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>		<i>Stability</i>
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-3402	Conduct Area Reconnaissance-Platoon				X	X			
17-TS-3403	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance-Platoon				X	X			
17-TS-3404	Conduct a Screen-Platoon				X		X		
17-TS-3405	Conduct Area Security/Stability Operations-Platoon				X			X	X
17-TS-3406	Perform Basic Tactical Tasks-Platoon				X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-4100	Reconnaissance Vehicle Section Gunnery			X					
17-TS-5015	Call for Fire	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>		<i>Stability</i>
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-5016	Perform Combat Lifesaver			X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-5017	Conduct Dismounted Reconnaissance/ Surveillance	X		X		X	X	X	
17-TS-5018	Conduct Dismounted Reconnaissance/ Surveillance				X	X	X	X	
17-TS-5100	Operate and Maintain Equipment/Vehicle	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
17-TS-5110	Maintain Assigned Vehicle			X		X	X	X	X

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>		<i>Stability</i>
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-5113	Gain and Sustain Digital Proficiency	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-5114	Reconnaissance Vehicle Crew Gunnery			X					
17-TS-5201	Operate and Maintain Equipment				X	X	X	X	X
71-TS-5300	Execute Bradley Gunnery Virtual Training	X							
71-TS-5301	Execute Gunnery Table I-VI, Crew Gunnery-Stabilized Platforms	X							
71-TS-5302	Execute Gunnery Table VII-IX, Section Gunnery	X	X						

**Table C-1. Example of a reconnaissance troop CATS task selection to METL matrix (continued)**

<i>Reconnaissance Troop, HBCT, IBCT, SBCT, R&amp;S Brigade</i>		<i>Unit</i>				<i>METs and Task Groups</i>			
						<i>Conduct Reconnaissance</i>	<i>Security</i>		<i>Stability</i>
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Task Title</i>	<i>HBCT</i>	<i>IBCT</i>	<i>SBCT</i>	<i>R &amp; S Brigade</i>	<i>Recon</i>	<i>Screen</i>	<i>Area Security</i>	<i>Public Order &amp; Safety</i>
17-TS-5113	Gain and Sustain Digital Proficiency	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
17-TS-5114	Reconnaissance Vehicle Crew Gunnery			X					
17-TS-5201	Operate and Maintain Equipment				X	X	X	X	X
71-TS-5300	Execute Bradley Gunnery Virtual Training	X							
71-TS-5301	Execute Gunnery Table I-VI, Crew Gunnery-Stabilized Platforms	X							
71-TS-5302	Execute Gunnery Table VII-IX, Section Gunnery	X	X						

**This page intentionally left blank.**

# Glossary

## ***Acronym/Term***

## ***Definition***

1SG first sergeant

## **A**

AA	avenue of approach
ACE	ammunition, casualty, and equipment
AKO	Army knowledge online
AO	area of operation
APC	armored personnel carrier
ARFORGEN	Army forces generation
ASCOPE	areas, structures, capabilities, organizations, people, and events
ASV	armored security vehicle
ATGM	antitank guided missile
ATLDG	Army training and leader development guidance
ATN	Army Training Network
ATS	Army training strategy

## **B**

BCIS	Battlefield Combat Identification System
BCT	brigade combat team
BCTC	battle command training center
BDA	battle damage assessment
BFSB	battlefield surveillance brigade
BHL	battle handover line
BN	battalion
BP	battle position
BRIDGEREP	bridge report

## **C**

CALFEX	combined arms live fire exercise
CAS	close air support
CASEVAC	casualty evacuation
CATS	combined arms training strategy
CB	chemical and biological
CBRN	chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear
CCIR	commanders critical information requirement
CCP	casualty collection point
CCTT	close combat tactical trainer

## **Glossary**

---

<b>Acronym/Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
CEF	contingency expeditionary force
CG	commanding general
COA	course of action
COIN	counterinsurgency
CoIST	company intelligence support team
COMMO	communication
COMSEC	communications security
COP	common operational picture
CP	command post
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CSS	combat service support
CTC	combat training center

### **D**

DE	directed energy
DEF	deployment expeditionary force
DOTD	Directorate of Training and Doctrine
DTMS	Digital Training Management System

### **E**

EA	engagement area
EOA	enemy courses of action
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EOF	escalation of force
EPLRS	Enhanced Position Location Reporting System
EPW	enemy prisoners of war

### **F**

FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
FIST	fire support team
FM	field manual
FMC	fully mission capable
FO	forward observer
FPF	final protective fires
FPL	final protective lines
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FSC	forward support company
FTX	field training exercise

### **G**

GSR	ground surveillance radar
-----	---------------------------



<b>Acronym/Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<b>H</b>	
HBCT	heavy brigade combat team
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HN	host nation
HPT	high payoff target
HQ	headquarters
HQDA	Headquarters, Department of the Army
HUMINT	human intelligence
<b>I</b>	
IBCT	Infantry brigade combat team
IMINT	imagery intelligence
IP	internet protocol
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IR	intelligence requirement
ISR	intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance
<b>J</b>	
JCATS	joint conflict and tactical simulation
<b>K</b>	
KIA	killed in action
<b>L</b>	
LD	line of departure
LDS	leader development strategy
LOA	limit of advance
LOGPAC	logistics package
LOGSTAT	logistics status
LRP	logistics release point
LVCG	live, virtual, constructive, and gaming
LZ	landing zone
<b>M</b>	
MCOE	Maneuver Center of Excellence
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
MET	mission-essential task
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available and civil considerations

## Glossary

---

<b>Acronym/Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
MOPP4	mission-oriented protective posture 4
MP	military police
MTF	medical treatment facility
MTOE	modified table of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan
MWD	military working dog

### N

NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge

### O

OAKOC	observation, avenues of approach, key and decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment
OBSTINTEL	obstacle intelligence
OE	operational environment
OP	observation post
OPORD	operational order
OPSEC	operations security
ORP	objective rally point

### P

PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PERSTAT	personnel status
PIO	police intelligence operations
PIR	priority intelligence requirement
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and balances
PME	professional military education
PMESII-PT	political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment and time
POL	petroleum, oil, and lubricant
POSNAV	position navigation
PSG	platoon sergeant

### Q

QC	quality control
----	-----------------

### R

R&S	reconnaissance and surveillance
RA	regular Army

<b>Acronym/Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
RC	Reserve Component
REDCON	readiness condition
REMBASS	Remotely Monitored Battlefield Sensor System
ROE	rules of engagement
ROI	rules of interaction
RP	release point

## S

S-1	adjutant (Army)
S-4	supply officer (Army)
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, equipment
SBCT	Stryker brigade combat team
SCPE	simplified collective protective equipment
SIGINT	signal intelligence
SIR	specific information requirements
SITREP	situation report
SOEO	scheme of engineer operations
SOFA	status of forces agreement
SOI	signal operation instruction
SOO	support operations officer
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
SSI	signal supplemental instructions
STB	super tropical bleach
STT	sergeants time training
STX	situation training exercise
SU	situational understanding

## T

T&EOS	training and evaluation outlines
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
TAP	toxicological agent-protective
TC	training circular
TDA	table of distribution and allowances
TES	tactical engagement simulation
TG	task group
TLP	troop leading procedure
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TRADOC	Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure

## Glossary

---

<i><b>Acronym/Term</b></i>	<i><b>Definition</b></i>
<b>U</b>	
UAS	Unmanned Aircraft System
UGS	unattended ground sensors
UTL	unit task list
UTM	unit training management
<b>V</b>	
VBS2	Virtual Battlespace 2
<b>W</b>	
WARNO	warning order
WFF	warfighting functions
WIA	wounded in action
WTPS	warfighter training support package
<b>X</b>	
XO	executive officer

# References

## SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication:

### ARMY PUBLICATIONS

Most Army doctrinal publications and regulations are available online at: <http://www.apd.army.mil>.

ADP 3-0, *Unified Land Operations*, 10 October 2011.

ADP 4-0, *Sustainment*, 31 July 2012.

ADP 5-0, *The Operations Process*, 17 May 2012.

ADP 6-0, *Mission Command*, 17 May 2012.

ADP 7-0, *Training Units and Developing Leaders*, 23 August 2012.

AR 190-8, *Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees*, 1 October 1997.

AR 350-1, *Army Training and Leader Development*, 4 August 2011.

AR 385-10, *The Army Safety Program*, 4 October 2011.

AR 600-8-1, *Army Casualty Program*, 30 April 2007.

ATP 3-20.15, *Tank Platoon*, 13 December 2012.

ATTP 3-20.97, *Dismounted Reconnaissance Troop*, 16 November 2010.

ATTP 3-21.9, *SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad*, 8 December 2010.

ATTP 4-02, *Army Health System*, 7 October 2011.

FM 1-02, *Operational Terms and Graphics*, 21 September 2004.

FM 2-01.3, *Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace*, 15 October 2009.

FM 2-19.4, *Brigade Combat Team Intelligence Operations*, 25 November 2008.

FM 2-91.4, *Intelligence Support to Urban Operations*, 20 March 2008.

FM 3-07, *Stability Operations*, 6 October 2008.

FM 3-11, *Multi-Service Doctrine for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Operations*, 1 July 2011.

## References

---

- FM 3-11.4, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection*, 2 June 2003.
- FM 3-11.5, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Decontamination*, 4 April 2006.
- FM 3-19.4, *Military Police Leaders' Handbook*, 4 March 2002.
- FM 3-20.21, *Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery*, 3 September 2009.
- FM 3-20.96, *Reconnaissance and Cavalry Squadron*, 12 March 2010.
- FM 3-20.98, *Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon*, 3 August 2009.
- FM 3-20.971, *Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop*, 4 August 2009.
- FM 3-21.8, *The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad*, 28 March 2007.
- FM 3-21.10, *The Infantry Rifle Company*, 27 July 2006.
- FM 3-21.75, *The Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills*, 28 January 2008.
- FM 3-39, *Military Police Operations*, 22 March 2001.
- FM 4-02.7, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Health Service Support in a Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Environment*, 15 July 2009.
- FM 4-25.11, *First Aid*, 23 December 2002.
- FM 5-19, *Composite Risk Management*, 21 August 2006.
- FM 6-22, *Army Leadership: Competent, Confident, and Agile*, 12 October 2006.
- FM 55-30, *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations*, 15 September 1999.
- TC 3-34.489, *The Soldier and the Environment*, 8 May 2001.
- The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army*, 25 November 2009,  
[https://secureweb2.hqda.pentagon.mil/vdas\\_armyposturestatement/2010/information\\_papers/Army\\_Leader\\_Development\\_Strategy\\_for\\_a\\_21st\\_Century\\_Army\\_\(ALDS\).asp](https://secureweb2.hqda.pentagon.mil/vdas_armyposturestatement/2010/information_papers/Army_Leader_Development_Strategy_for_a_21st_Century_Army_(ALDS).asp).

## JOINT AND DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE PUBLICATIONS

Most joint publications are available online at:

<http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/doctrine/doctrine.htm>.

JP 1-02, *Department of Defense (DOD) Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*, 8 November 2010.

## DOCUMENTS NEEDED

### FORMS

DA forms are available on the APD web site ([www.apd.army.mil](http://www.apd.army.mil)).

DD forms are available on the OSD web site

(<http://www.dtic.mil/whs/directives/infomgt/forms/index.htm>).

DA Form 1156, *Casualty Feeder Card*.

DA Form 2028, *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*.

DD Form 1380, *U.S. Field Medical Card*.

## READINGS RECOMMENDED

None

## WEBSITES

Army, G-3/5/7 Memorandum, *A Leader Development Strategy for a 21<sup>st</sup> Century Army*, 25 November 2009,

[https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/ArmyLdrDevStrategy\\_2009125\[1\].pdf](https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/ArmyLdrDevStrategy_2009125[1].pdf).

Army Knowledge Online (AKO) <https://www.us.army.mil>.

ATLDG, Army, G-3/5/7 Memorandum, *Army Training and Leader Development Guidance, FY 10-11*, 31 July 2009,

<https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/CSA%20ATLD%20GUIDANCE%202009.pdf>.

Army Training Network (ATN), <http://atn.army.mil/index.aspx>.

Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS),

[https://atn.army.mil/dsp\\_CATSviewer01.aspx](https://atn.army.mil/dsp_CATSviewer01.aspx).

Deputy Chief of Staff, G-3/5/7 Memorandum, *Army Training Strategy (ATS)*, 17 November 2009,

<https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/Army%20Training%20Strategy%20Appendix%20A%2017%20Dec%202009.pdf>.

Digital Training Management System (DTMS),

<https://dtms.army.mil> (individual password required).

## References

---

MCoE Collective Training Branch Home Page,  
<https://www.us.army.mil/suite/grouppage/130823>.



# Index

## A

Army force generation (ARFORGEN), 1-9

Army Training Network (ATN), 1-8

Army training strategy (ATS), 1-2  
10 goals, 1-3

Army Training System, 1-4  
11 principles, 1-4

## C

combined arms training strategy (CATS), 1-19  
functional, 1-20  
locations, 1-21  
task selection, 1-20  
unit, 1-19

## D

decisive action, 1-12  
Digital Training Management System (DTMS), 1-19

## I

internal training events, 1-21

## L

leader development, 1-5  
leader development strategy (LDS), 1-3  
leadership qualities, 1-3  
live, virtual, constructive, and gaming (LVCG), 1-22

## M

mission essential task list (METL)  
collective tasks, 3-1  
crosswalk, 2-1  
development, 1-14

## N

noncommissioned officers (NCOs), 1-4

## O

operational environment (OE), 1-10

mission variables, 1-10

## T

task  
collective, 1-17  
individual, 1-17  
shared, 1-17  
unique, 1-18

threats  
four major categories or challenges, 1-12

training and evaluation outline (T&EO), 2-9

training products, 1-16

## U

unit task list (UTL), 1-18, A-1  
unit training management (UTM), 1-8

## W

warfighter training support package (WTSP), 1-21

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**TC 3-20.97**  
**27 February 2013**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**RAYMOND T. ODIERNO**  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official:

A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading "Joyce E. Morrow".

**JOYCE E. MORROW**  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*  
1135607

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and United States Army Reserve:*  
To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number  
(IDN) 115890, requirements for TC 3-20.97.

